



# **C790 Series**

## **User's Guide**

[www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com)

---

Machine type(s):

5062

Model(s):

210, 230, 235

# Contents

<b>Safety information.....</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>Learning about the printer.....</b>	<b>8</b>
Thank you for choosing this printer!.....	8
Finding information about the printer.....	8
Selecting a location for the printer.....	9
Printer configurations.....	10
Using the security lock feature.....	12
Understanding the printer control panel.....	12
Understanding the home screen.....	13
Using the touch-screen buttons.....	15
<b>Additional printer setup.....</b>	<b>18</b>
Installing internal options.....	18
Order of installation.....	35
Installing optional trays.....	35
Attaching cables.....	36
Verifying printer setup.....	37
Setting up the printer software.....	38
Setting up wireless printing.....	39
Installing the printer on a wired network.....	44
Changing port settings after installing a new network Internal Solutions Port.....	46
Setting up serial printing.....	48
<b>Setting up and using the Home Screen applications.....</b>	<b>50</b>
Making the home screen applications work for you.....	50
Configuring the home screen or idle screen.....	51
Configuring Eco-Settings.....	52
Configuring Forms and Favorites.....	54
Exporting and importing a configuration using the Embedded Web Server.....	56
<b>Minimizing your printer's environmental impact.....</b>	<b>57</b>
Saving paper and toner.....	57
Saving energy.....	58
Recycling.....	60

<b>Loading paper and specialty media.....</b>	<b>62</b>
Setting the paper size and type.....	62
Configuring Universal paper settings.....	62
Loading the standard or optional 550-sheet tray.....	63
Loading the 2000-sheet high-capacity feeder.....	66
Loading the multipurpose feeder.....	68
Linking and unlinking trays.....	70
<b>Paper and specialty media guide.....</b>	<b>73</b>
Paper guidelines.....	73
Storing paper.....	75
Supported paper sizes, types, and weights.....	76
<b>Printing.....</b>	<b>79</b>
Printing a document.....	79
Printing specialty documents.....	79
Printing confidential and other held jobs.....	82
Supported flash drives and file types.....	83
Printing from a flash drive.....	84
Printing information pages.....	85
Canceling a print job.....	85
Printing in black and white.....	86
Adjusting toner darkness.....	86
Supported finishing features.....	87
<b>Understanding printer menus.....</b>	<b>89</b>
Menus list.....	89
Supplies menu.....	90
Paper menu.....	91
Reports menu.....	103
Network/Ports menu.....	104
Security menu.....	117
Settings menu.....	120
Help menu.....	148

<b>Securing the printer hard disk and other installed memory.....</b>	<b>150</b>
Statement of Volatility.....	150
Erasing volatile memory.....	151
Erasing non-volatile memory.....	151
Erasing printer hard disk memory.....	151
Configuring printer hard disk encryption.....	153
<b>Maintaining the printer.....</b>	<b>154</b>
Cleaning the exterior of the printer.....	154
Cleaning the printhead lenses.....	154
Storing supplies.....	155
Checking the status of supplies.....	156
Ordering supplies.....	156
Replacing supplies.....	158
Moving the printer.....	162
<b>Administrative support.....</b>	<b>164</b>
Finding advanced networking and administrator information.....	164
Using the Embedded Web Server.....	164
Checking the virtual display.....	164
Checking the status of the printer.....	164
Setting up e-mail alerts.....	165
Viewing reports.....	165
Restoring factory default settings.....	166
<b>Clearing jams.....</b>	<b>167</b>
Avoiding jams.....	167
Understanding jam numbers and locations.....	167
200 paper jam.....	169
201 paper jam.....	169
202–203 paper jams.....	170
230 paper jam.....	171
231–239 paper jams.....	172
24x paper jam.....	172
250 paper jam.....	173

400–403 and 460–461 paper jams.....	174
431–454, and 456–458 paper jams.....	175
455 staple jam.....	175
<b>Troubleshooting.....</b>	<b>178</b>
Checking an unresponsive printer.....	178
Understanding printer messages.....	178
Solving printing problems.....	195
Solving option problems.....	198
Solving paper feed problems.....	201
Solving print quality problems.....	202
Solving color quality problems.....	214
Embedded Web Server does not open.....	217
Contacting Customer Support.....	217
<b>Notices.....</b>	<b>218</b>
Product information.....	218
Edition notice.....	218
Power consumption.....	222
<b>Index.....</b>	<b>233</b>

# Safety information

Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet that is near the product and easily accessible.

Do not place or use this product near water or wet locations.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** This product uses a laser. Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

This product uses a printing process that heats the print media, and the heat may cause the media to release emissions. You must understand the section in your operating instructions that discusses the guidelines for selecting print media to avoid the possibility of harmful emissions.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The lithium battery in this product is not intended to be replaced. There is a danger of explosion if a lithium battery is incorrectly replaced. Do not recharge, disassemble, or incinerate a lithium battery. Discard used lithium batteries according to the manufacturer's instructions and local regulations.

 **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** Before moving the printer, follow these guidelines to avoid personal injury or printer damage:

- Turn the printer off using the power switch, and then unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- Disconnect all cords and cables from the printer before moving it.
- Lift the printer off the optional drawer, and set it aside instead of trying to lift the drawer and printer at the same time.

**Note:** Use the handholds located on both sides of the printer to lift it off the optional drawer.

Use only the power cord provided with this product or the manufacturer's authorized replacement.

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** Make sure that all external connections (such as Ethernet and telephone system connections) are properly installed in their marked plug-in ports.

This product is designed, tested, and approved to meet strict global safety standards with the use of specific manufacturer's components. The safety features of some parts may not always be obvious. The manufacturer is not responsible for the use of other replacement parts.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** Do not cut, twist, bind, crush, or place heavy objects on the power cord. Do not subject the power cord to abrasion or stress. Do not pinch the power cord between objects such as furniture and walls. If any of these things happen, a risk of fire or electrical shock results. Inspect the power cord regularly for signs of such problems. Remove the power cord from the electrical outlet before inspecting it.

Refer service or repairs, other than those described in the user documentation, to a professional service person.

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** To avoid the risk of electric shock when cleaning the exterior of the printer, unplug the power cord from the wall outlet and disconnect all cables from the printer before proceeding.

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** Do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm. Do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the fax feature, power cord, or telephone, during a lightning storm.

 **CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD:** Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using a high-capacity input tray, a duplex unit and an input option, or more than one input option. If you purchased a multifunction printer (MFP) that scans, copies, and faxes, you may need additional furniture. For more information, see [www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters](http://www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters).

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** To reduce the risk of equipment instability, load each paper drawer or tray separately. Keep all other drawers or trays closed until needed.

**SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS.**

# Learning about the printer

## Thank you for choosing this printer!

We've worked hard to make sure it will meet your needs.

To start using your new printer right away, use the setup materials that came with the printer, and then skim the *User's Guide* to learn how to perform basic tasks. To get the most out of your printer, read the *User's Guide* carefully, and make sure you check the latest updates on our Web site.

We're committed to delivering performance and value with our printers, and we want to make sure you're satisfied. If you do encounter any problems along the way, one of our knowledgeable support representatives will be delighted to help you get back on track fast. And if you find something we could do better, please let us know. After all, you are the reason we do what we do, and your suggestions help us do it better.

## Finding information about the printer

What are you looking for?	Find it here
Initial setup instructions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Connecting the printer</li><li>• Installing the printer software</li></ul>	Setup documentation—The setup documentation came with the printer and is also available on the Lexmark Web site at <a href="http://support.lexmark.com">http://support.lexmark.com</a> .
Additional setup and instructions for using the printer: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Selecting and storing paper and specialty media</li><li>• Loading paper</li><li>• Configuring printer settings</li><li>• Viewing and printing documents and photos</li><li>• Setting up and using the printer software</li><li>• Configuring the printer on a network (depending on your printer model)</li><li>• Caring for and maintaining the printer</li><li>• Troubleshooting and solving problems</li></ul>	<i>User's Guide</i> —The <i>User's Guide</i> is available on the <i>Software and Documentation CD</i> . For updates, check our Web site at <a href="http://support.lexmark.com">http://support.lexmark.com</a> .
Instructions for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Installing the printer using Guided or Advanced wireless setup</li><li>• Connecting the printer to an Ethernet or a wireless network</li><li>• Troubleshooting printer connection problems</li></ul>	<i>Networking Guide</i> — Open the <i>Software and Documentation CD</i> , and then look for <i>Printer and Software Documentation</i> under the Pubs folder. From the list of publications, click the <b>Networking Guide</b> link.

What are you looking for?	Find it here
<p>Help using the printer software</p>	<p>Windows or Mac Help—Open a printer software program or application, and then click <b>Help</b>. Click  to view context-sensitive information.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Help installs automatically with the printer software.</li> <li>• The printer software is located in the printer Program folder or on the desktop, depending on your operating system.</li> </ul>
<p>Latest supplemental information, updates, and technical support:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Documentation</li> <li>• Driver downloads</li> <li>• Live chat support</li> <li>• E-mail support</li> <li>• Telephone support</li> </ul>	<p>Lexmark Support Web site— <b><a href="http://support.lexmark.com">http://support.lexmark.com</a></b></p> <p><b>Note:</b> Select your country or region, and then select your product to view the appropriate support site.</p> <p>Support telephone numbers and hours of operation for your country or region can be found on the Support Web site or on the printed warranty that came with your printer.</p> <p>Record the following information (located on the store receipt and at the back of the printer), and have it ready when you contact support so they may serve you faster:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Machine Type number</li> <li>• Serial number</li> <li>• Date purchased</li> <li>• Store where purchased</li> </ul>
<p>Warranty information</p>	<p>Warranty information varies by country or region:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>In the US</b>—See the Statement of Limited Warranty included with this printer, or at <b><a href="http://support.lexmark.com">http://support.lexmark.com</a></b>.</li> <li>• <b>In other countries and regions</b>—See the printed warranty that came with your printer.</li> </ul>

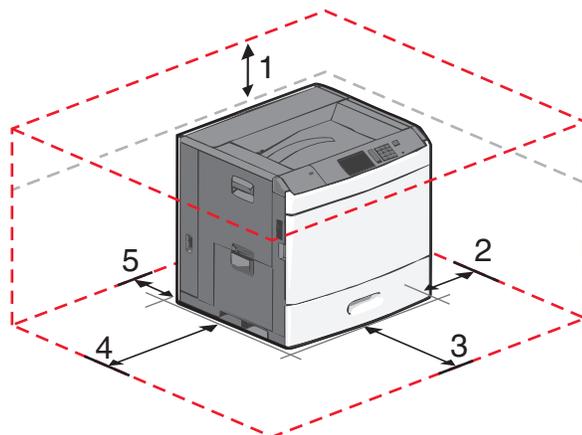
## Selecting a location for the printer

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

When selecting a location for the printer, leave enough room to open trays, covers, and doors. If you plan to install any options, leave enough room for them too. It is important to:

- Make sure airflow in the room meets the latest revision of the ASHRAE 62 standard or the CEN Technical Committee 156 standard.
- Provide a flat, sturdy, and stable surface.
- Keep the printer:
  - Away from the direct airflow of air conditioners, heaters, or ventilators
  - Free from direct sunlight, humidity extremes, or temperature fluctuations

- Clean, dry, and free of dust
- Allow the following recommended amount of space around the printer for proper ventilation:

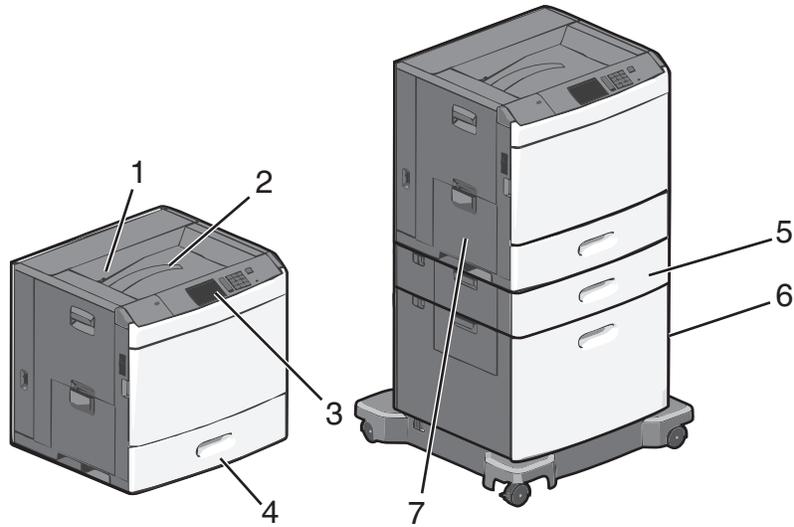


1	152.4 mm (6.0 in.)
2	101.6 mm (4.0 in.)
3	609.6 mm (24.0 in.)
4	381 mm (15.0 in.)
5	304.8 mm (12.0 in.)

## Printer configurations

**CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD:** Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using a high-capacity input tray, a duplex unit and an input option, or more than one input option. If you purchased a multifunction printer (MFP) that scans, copies, and faxes, you may need additional furniture. For more information, see [www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters](http://www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters).

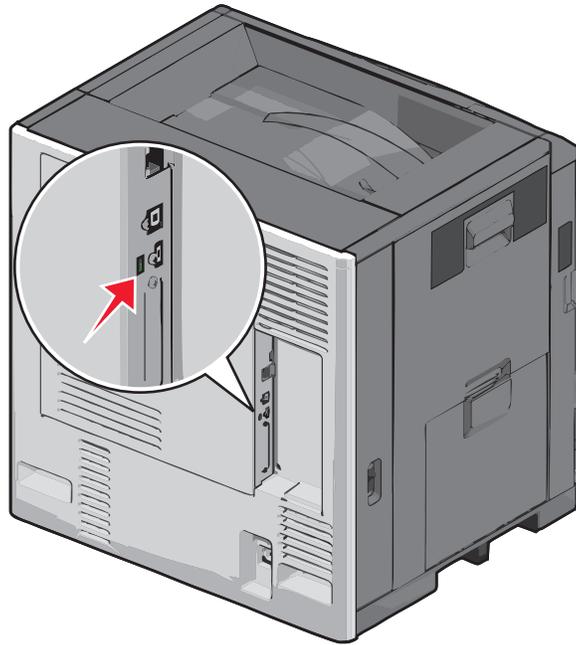
You can configure your basic printer by adding optional trays.



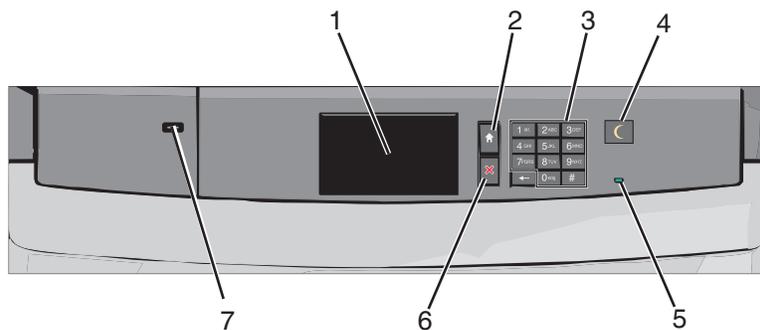
<b>1</b>	Standard exit bin
<b>2</b>	Wire bail
<b>3</b>	Printer control panel
<b>4</b>	Standard 550-sheet tray
<b>5</b>	Optional 550-sheet tray
<b>6</b>	Optional 2000-sheet high-capacity feeder
<b>7</b>	Multipurpose feeder

# Using the security lock feature

The printer is equipped with a security lock feature. When a lock compatible with most laptop computers is attached, the printer is locked. Once locked, the metal plate and the system board cannot be removed. Attach a security lock to the printer in the location shown.



# Understanding the printer control panel



Item		Description
1	Display	Shows the status of the printer
2	Home	Lets you navigate back to the home screen
3	Keypad	Allows you to enter numbers, letters, or symbols on the printer

Item	Description	
4	Sleep	<p>Enables Sleep Mode or Hibernate Mode</p> <p>The following are the statuses of the indicator light and the Sleep button:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Entering or waking from Sleep Mode—The indicator light is illuminated solid green, Sleep button is unilluminated.</li> <li>• Operating in Sleep Mode—The indicator light is illuminated solid green, Sleep button is illuminated solid amber.</li> <li>• Entering or waking from Hibernate Mode—The indicator light is illuminated solid green, Sleep button is illuminated blinking amber.</li> <li>• Operating in Hibernate Mode—The indicator light is unilluminated, Sleep button is blinking amber for 1/10 of a second, then go completely unilluminated for 1.9 seconds in pulsing pattern.</li> </ul> <p>The following actions wake the printer from Sleep Mode:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Touching the screen or any hard button presses.</li> <li>• Opening an input tray, cover, or door.</li> <li>• Sending a print job from the computer.</li> <li>• Performing a Power On Reset (POR) with the main power switch.</li> </ul>
5	Indicator light	<p>Off—The printer is off.</p> <p>Blinking green—The printer is warming up, processing data, or printing.</p> <p>Solid green—The printer is on, but idle.</p> <p>Solid red—Operator intervention is needed.</p>
6	Stop/Cancel	<p>Stops all printer activity</p> <p><b>Note:</b> A list of options is displayed once <b>Stopped</b> appears on the display.</p>
7	USB port	<p>Allows you to connect a USB Bluetooth adapter, or a flash drive to the printer</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Only the front USB port supports flash drives.</p>

## Understanding the home screen

When the printer is turned on, the display shows a basic screen, referred to as the home screen. Use the home screen buttons to initiate an action.

**Note:** Buttons appearing on the home screen may vary depending on home screen customization settings.



Display item	Description
1	Change Language Allows you to temporarily change the primary language and reports on the display; they will remain in effect unless changed
2	Bookmarks Allows you to create, organize, and save a set of bookmarks (URLs) into a tree view of folders and file links
3	Held Jobs Displays all held jobs
4	USB Displays files on a USB drive
5	Menus Displays the menus
6	Status message bar <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Shows the current printer status such as <b>Ready</b> or <b>Busy</b></li> <li><b>Note:</b> Make sure <b>Ready</b> appears before performing any printer task.</li> <li>Shows printer conditions such as <b>Fuser missing</b> or <b>Cartridge Low</b></li> <li>Shows intervention messages and gives instructions for the printer to continue processing</li> </ul>
7	Status/Supplies Displays a warning or error message whenever the printer requires intervention to continue processing Touch this to access the messages screen for more information on the message, and how to clear it.
8	Tips Opens context-sensitive Help information on the touch screen

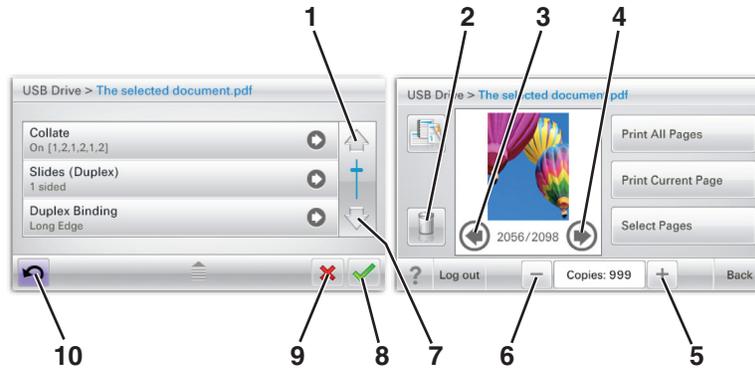
This may also appear on the home screen:

Display item	Description
Search Held Jobs	Searches on any of the following items and returns search results: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>User names for held or confidential print jobs</li> <li>Job names for held jobs, excluding confidential print jobs</li> <li>Profile names</li> <li>Bookmark container or print job names</li> <li>USB container or print job names for supported file types</li> </ul>

# Using the touch-screen buttons

**Note:** Your screens and buttons may vary depending on your options and administrative setup.

## Sample touch screen



	Use this	To
1	Up arrow 	Scroll up.
2	Delete folder 	Delete a print job by dragging it to the delete folder.
3	Left arrow 	Scroll left.
4	Right arrow 	Scroll right.
5	Right scroll increase 	Scroll to another value in increasing order.
6	Left scroll decrease 	Scroll to another value in decreasing order.

	Use this	To
7	Down arrow 	Scroll down.
8	Accept 	Save a setting.
9	Cancel 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cancel an action or a selection.</li> <li>• Cancel out a screen and return to the previous screen.</li> </ul>
10	Back 	Navigate back to the previous screen.

## Other touch-screen buttons

Button	Function
Exit 	Lets you exit from the current screen to the home screen
Unselected radio button 	Indicates that an item is not selected
Selected radio button 	Indicates a selection
Search 	Lets you search for files and menus
Tips 	Opens context-sensitive Help information on the display

Button	Function
Warning 	Indicates a warning or error condition

## Features

Feature	Description
Menu trail line: <u>Menus</u> > <u>Settings</u> > <u>Print Settings</u> > Number of Copies	<p>A menu trail line is located at the top of each menu screen. This feature acts as a trail, showing the path taken to arrive at the current menu. It gives the exact location within the menus.</p> <p>The Number of Copies is not underlined since this is the current screen. If you touch an underlined word on the Number of Copies screen before the Number of Copies is set and saved, then the selection is not saved, and does not become the default setting.</p>
Attendance message alert 	If an attendance message affects a function, this icon appears and the red indicator light blinks.

# Additional printer setup

## Installing internal options

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

You can customize your printer connectivity and memory capacity by adding optional cards. The instructions in this section explain how to install the available cards; you can also use them to locate a card for removal.

## Available internal options

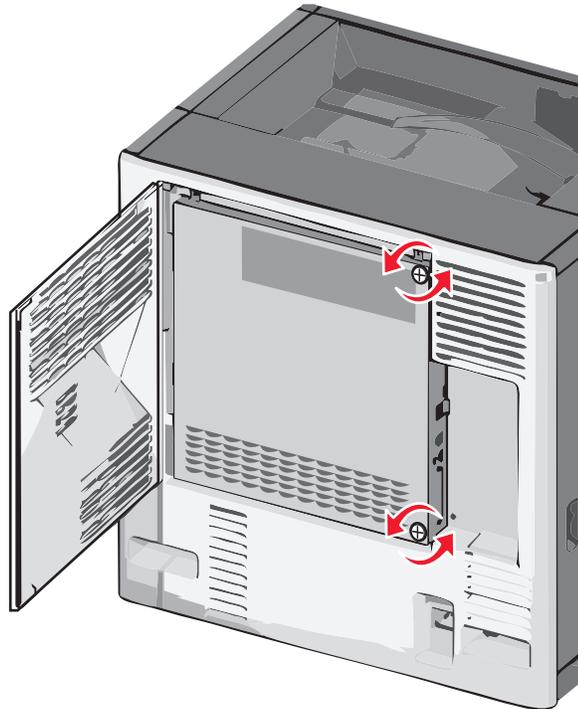
- Memory cards
  - Printer memory
  - Flash memory
  - Fonts
- Firmware cards
  - Bar Code
  - PrintCryption™
- Printer hard disk
- Lexmark™ Internal Solutions Ports (ISP)
  - RS-232-C Serial ISP
  - Parallel 1284-B ISP
  - MarkNet™ N8250 802.11 b/g/n Wireless ISP
  - MarkNet N8130 10/100 Fiber ISP
  - MarkNet N8120 10/100/1000 Ethernet ISP

## Accessing the system board

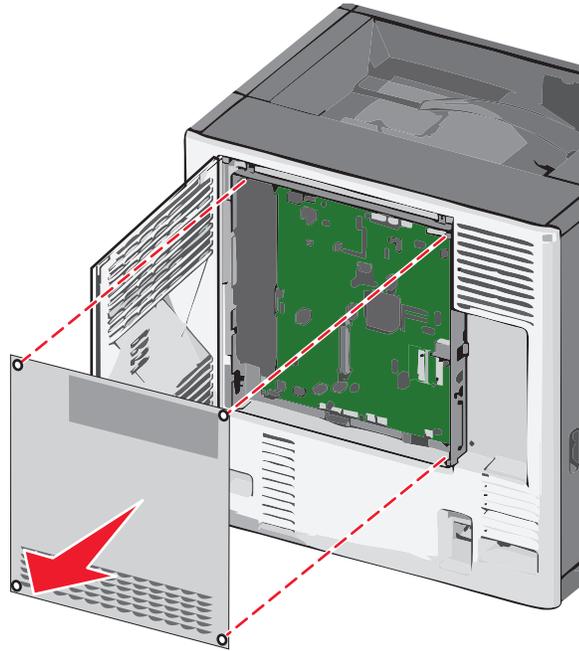
**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

**Note:** This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

- 1 Open the cover.
- 2 Remove the metal panel.
  - a Turn the screws on the panel counterclockwise to remove them.

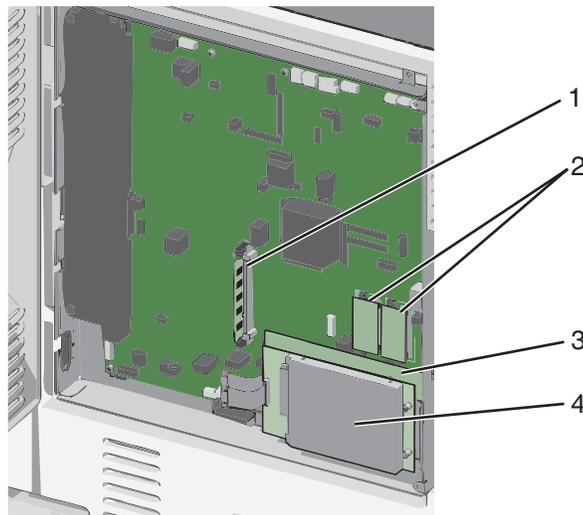


**b** Shift the metal panel to the left to disengage the hooks, then pull forward to remove it.



**3** Use the following illustration to locate the appropriate connectors.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

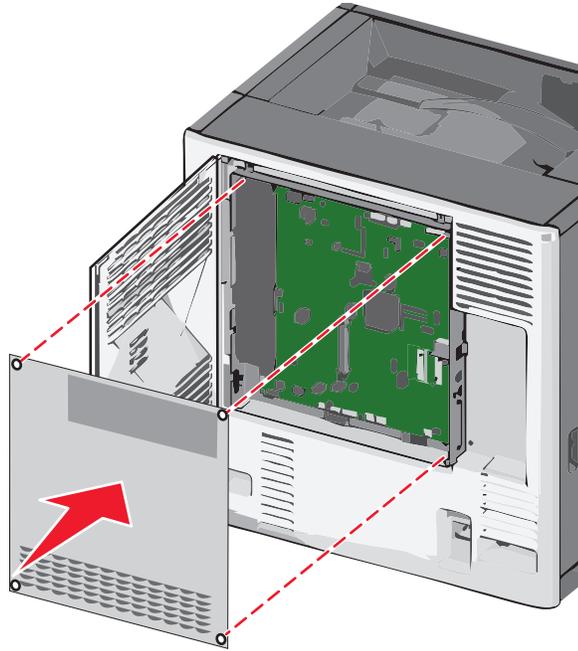


<b>1</b>	Memory card connector
<b>2</b>	Firmware and flash memory card connectors
<b>3</b>	Internal print server connector
<b>4</b>	Hard disk connector

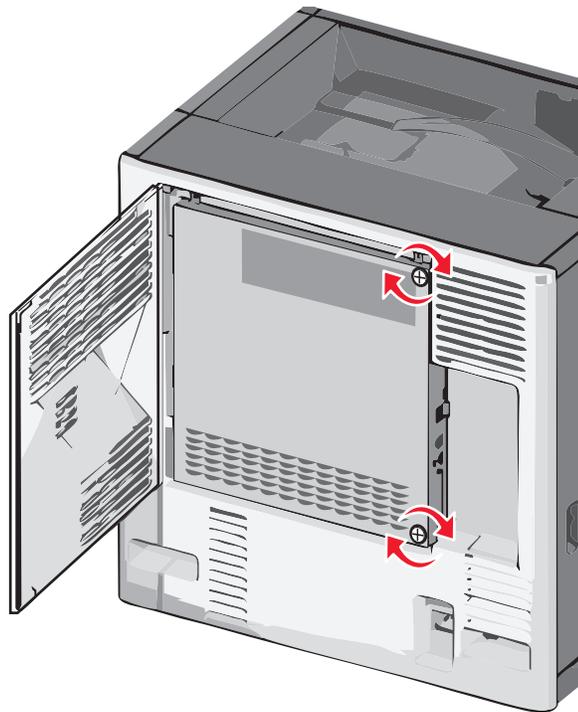
**4** Reattach the system board cover.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

- a** Reinstall the hooks on the left side of the metal panel into the slots on the system board cage, and then shift to the right.



- b** Align and then turn each screw clockwise to tighten.



- c** Close the cover.

## Installing a memory card

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

An optional memory card can be purchased separately and attached to the system board.

**1** Access the system board.

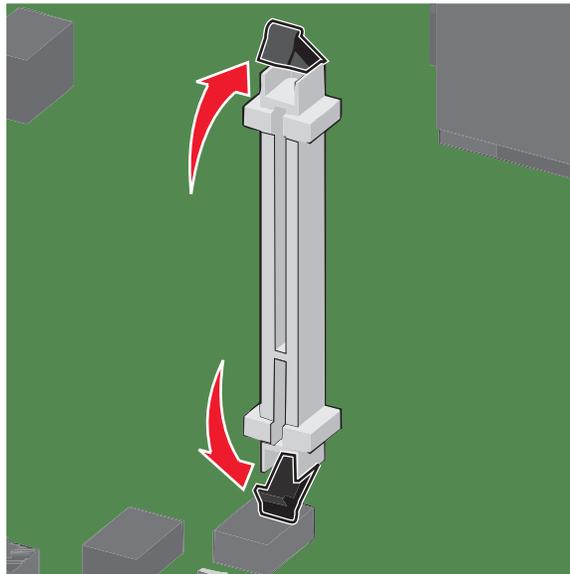
For more information, see “Accessing the system board” on page 19.

**Note:** This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

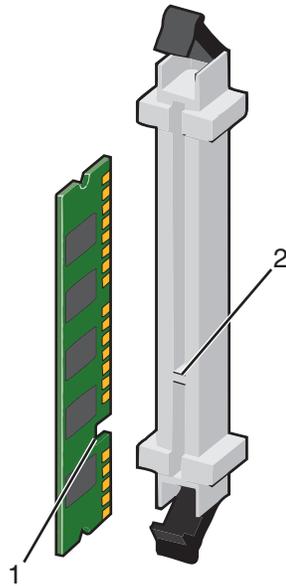
**2** Unpack the memory card.

**Note:** Avoid touching the connection points along the edge of the card.

**3** On the system board, open the memory card connector latches.

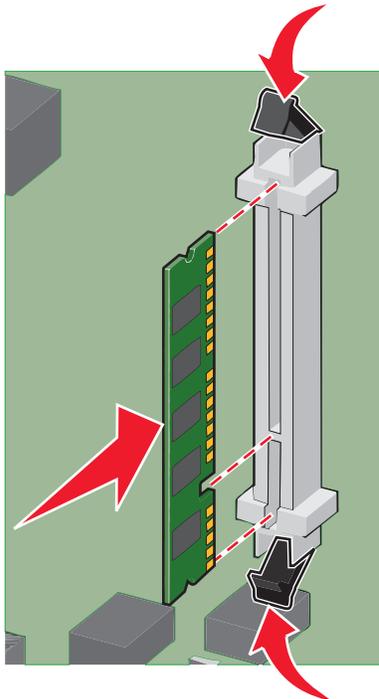


4 Align the notches on the memory card to the ridges on the connector.



1	Notch
2	Ridge

5 Push the memory card straight into the connector until it *clicks* into place.



6 Reattach the system board cover.

## Installing a flash memory or firmware card

The system board has two connections for an optional flash memory or firmware card. Only one of each may be installed, but the connectors are interchangeable.

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

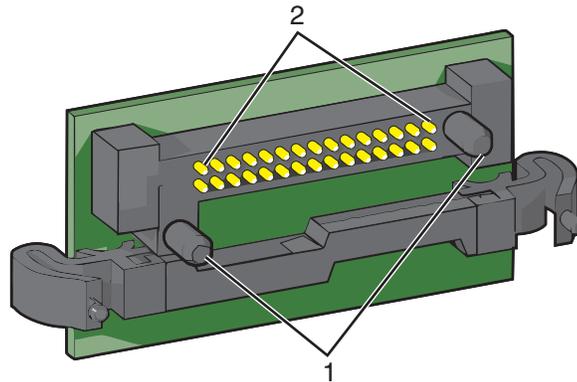
**1** Access the system board.

**Note:** This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

**2** Unpack the card.

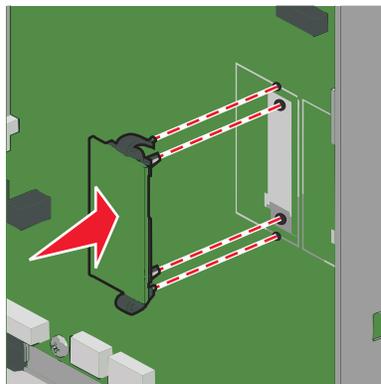
**Note:** Avoid touching the connection points along the edge of the card.

**3** Holding the card by its sides, align the plastic pins on the card with the holes on the system board.



<b>1</b>	Plastic pins
<b>2</b>	Metal pins

**4** Push the card firmly into place.



**Notes:**

- The entire length of the connector on the card must touch and be flush against the system board.
- Be careful not to damage the connectors.

5 Reattach the system board cover.

## Installing an Internal Solutions Port

The system board supports one optional Lexmark Internal Solutions Port (ISP).

**Note:** This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

**CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

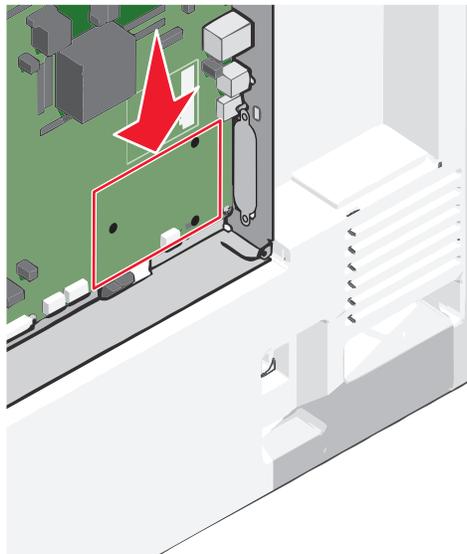
1 Access the system board.

For more information, see “Accessing the system board” on page 19.

2 Unpack the ISP and plastic tee.

**Note:** Avoid touching the components on the card.

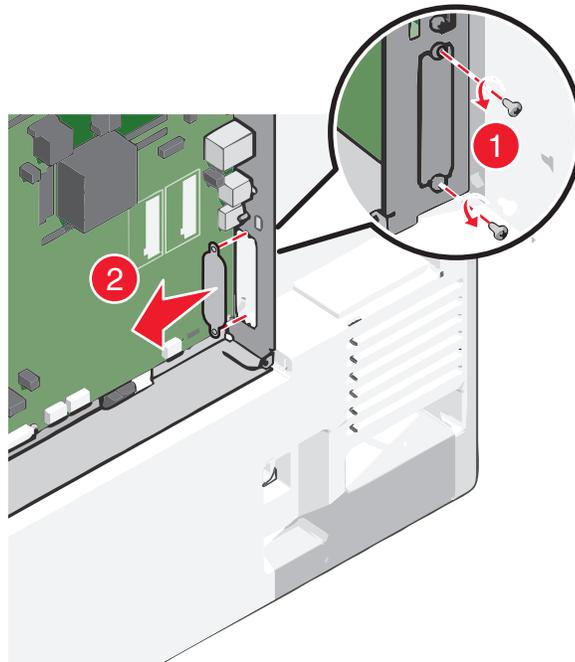
3 Locate the appropriate connector on the system board.



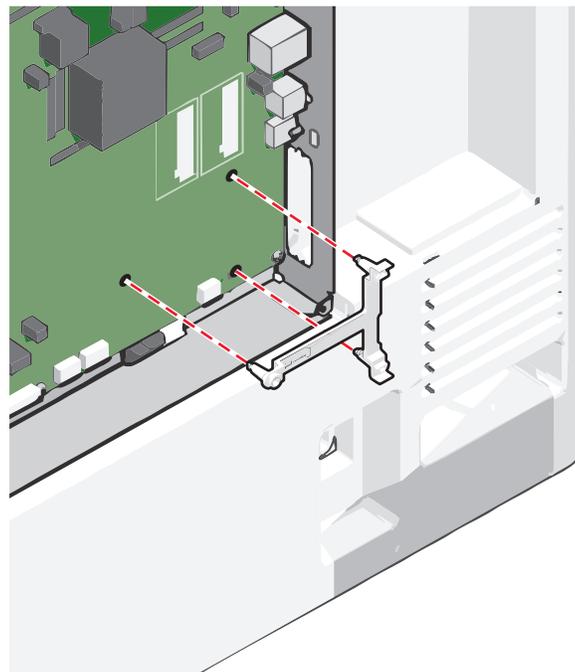
4 Remove the printer hard disk.

For more information, see “Removing a printer hard disk” on page 34.

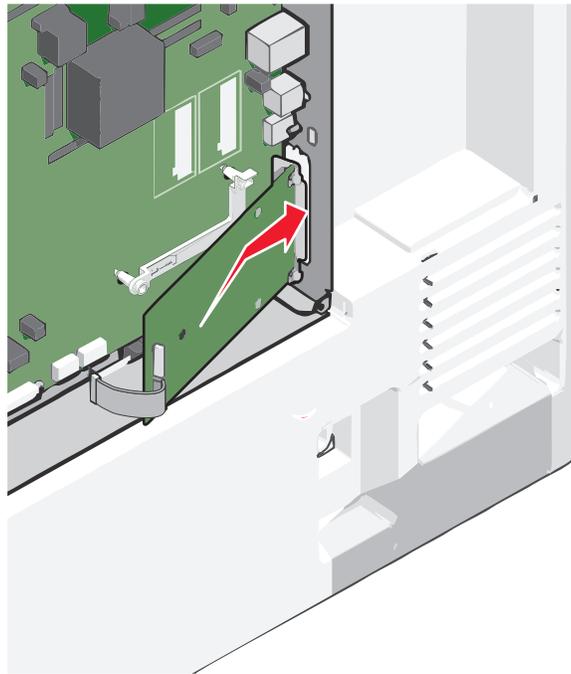
5 Remove the metal cover from the ISP opening.



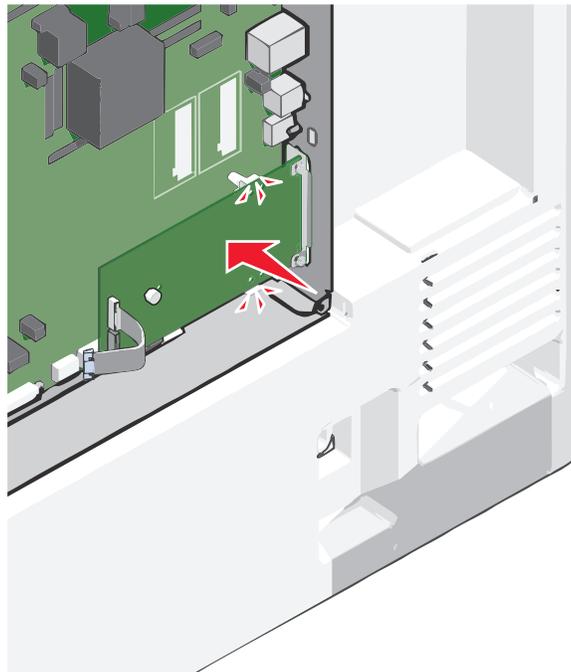
6 Align the posts of the plastic tee to the holes on the system board, and press down until the tee *clicks* into place. Be sure each post of the tee has latched completely, and the tee is seated firmly on the system board.



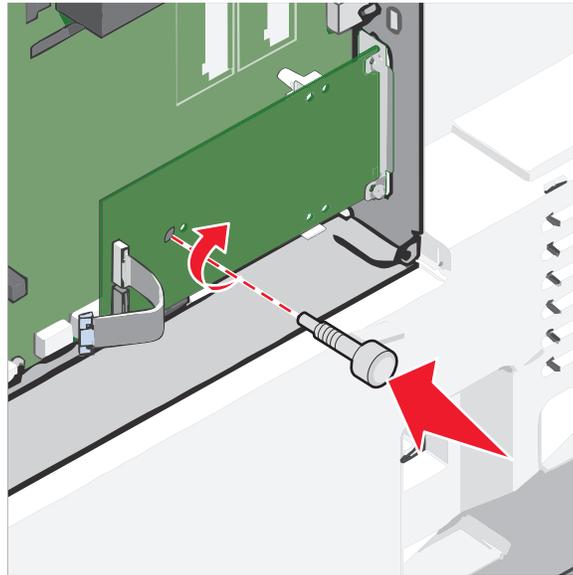
- 7** Install the ISP on the plastic tee. Angle the ISP over the plastic tee, and then slant it toward the plastic tee so that any overhanging connectors will pass through the ISP opening in the system board cage.



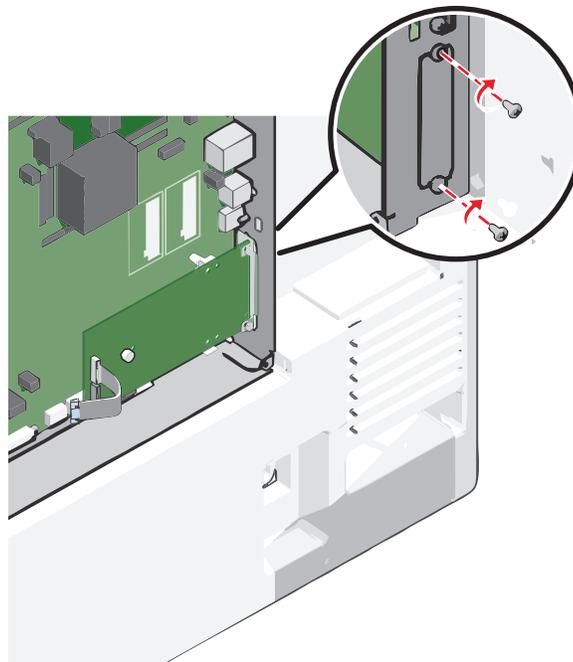
- 8** Lower the ISP toward the plastic tee until the ISP is seated between the guides of the plastic tee.



- 9 Insert the long thumbscrew and turn it clockwise, enough to hold the ISP in place, but do not yet tighten the thumbscrew.



- 10 Attach the two provided screws to secure the ISP mounting bracket to the system board cage.

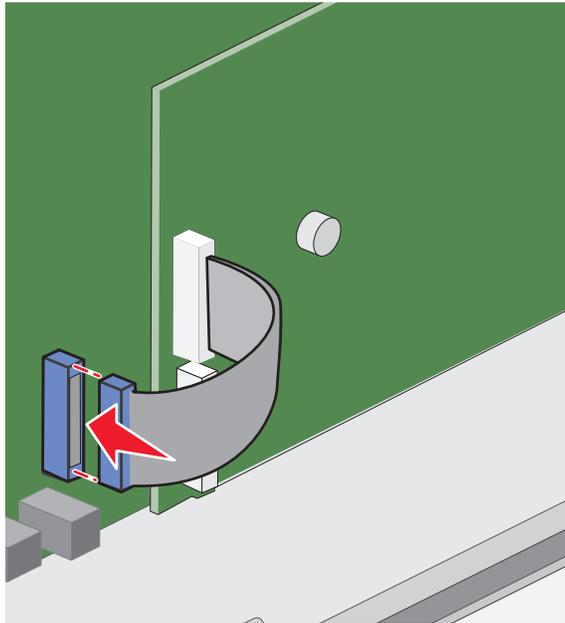


- 11 Tighten the long thumbscrew.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not overtighten the thumbscrew.

- 12 Insert the plug of the ISP interface cable into the receptacle of the system board.

**Note:** The plugs and receptacles are color-coded.



**13** Reattach the system board cover.

## Installing a printer hard disk

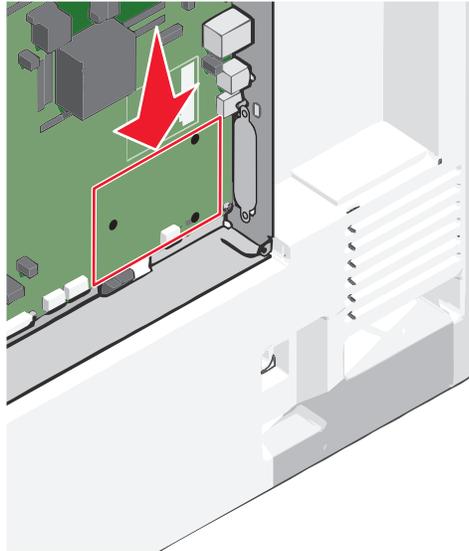
**Note:** This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

**⚠ CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

- 1** Access the system board.  
For more information, see “Accessing the system board” on page 19.
- 2** Unpack the printer hard disk.

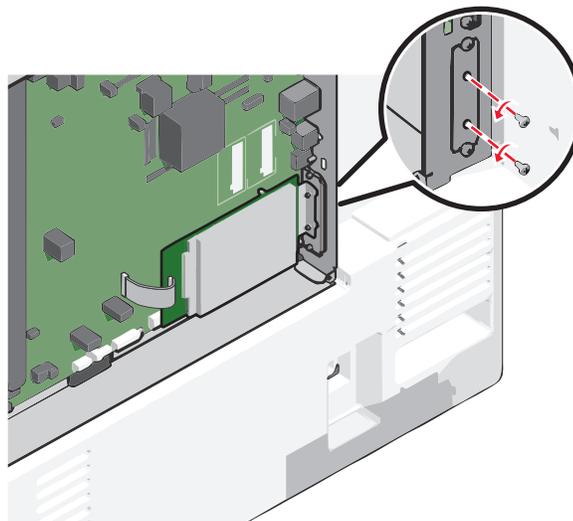
**3** Locate the appropriate connector on the system board.



**Note:** If an optional ISP is currently installed, then the printer hard disk must be installed onto the ISP.

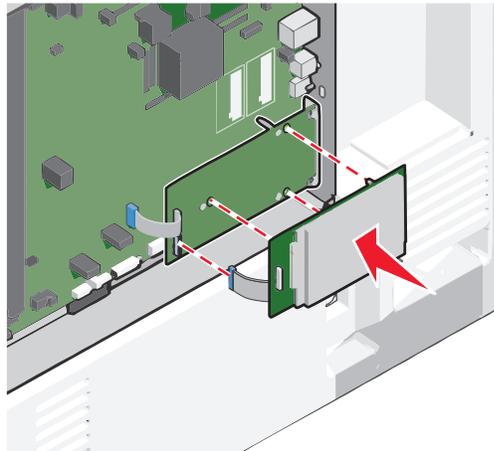
To install a printer hard disk onto the ISP:

**a** Using a flathead screwdriver, loosen the screws.



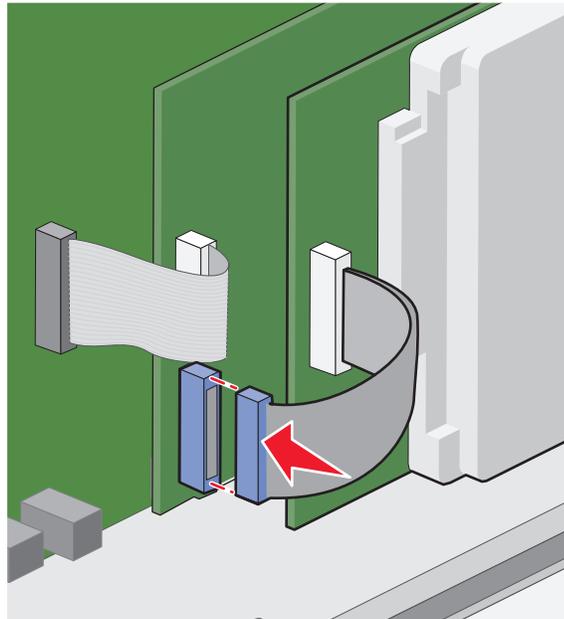
**b** Remove the screws attached to the printer hard disk mounting bracket, and then remove the bracket.

- c Align the standoffs of the printer hard disk to the holes in the ISP, and then press down on the printer hard disk until the standoffs are in place.



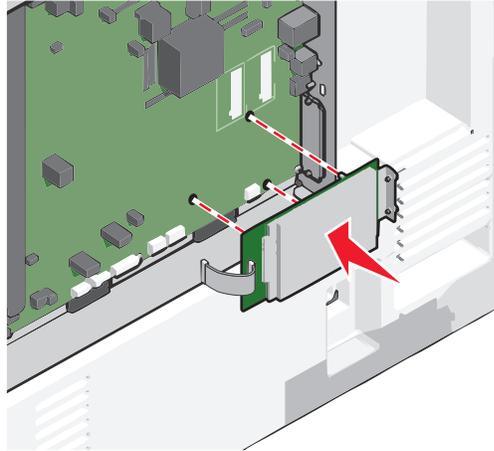
- d Insert the plug of the printer hard disk interface cable into the receptacle of the ISP.

**Note:** The plugs and receptacles are color-coded.

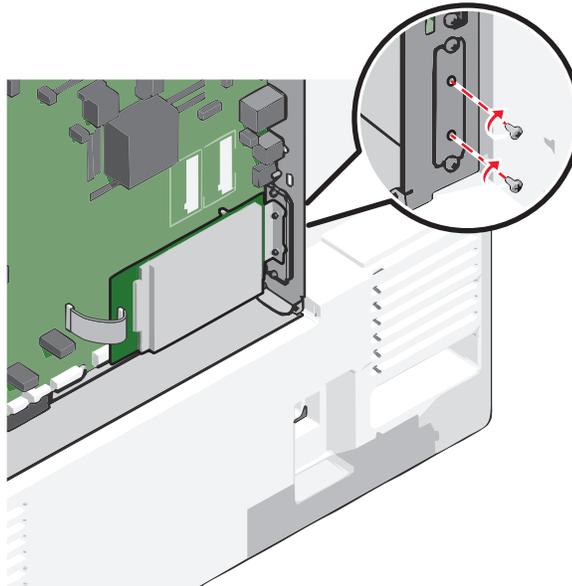


To install a printer hard disk directly on the system board:

- a** Align the standoffs of the printer hard disk to the holes in the system board, and then press down on the printer hard disk until the standoffs are in place.

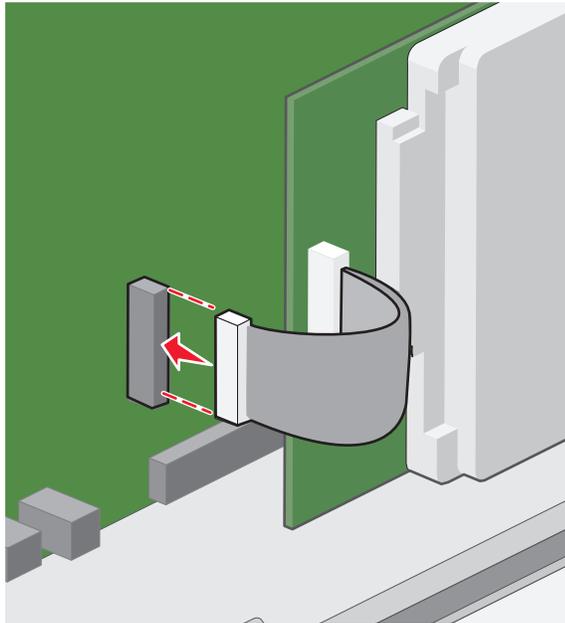


- b** Use the two provided screws to attach the printer hard disk mounting bracket.



- c** Insert the plug of the printer hard disk interface cable into the receptacle of the system board.

**Note:** The plugs and receptacles are color-coded.



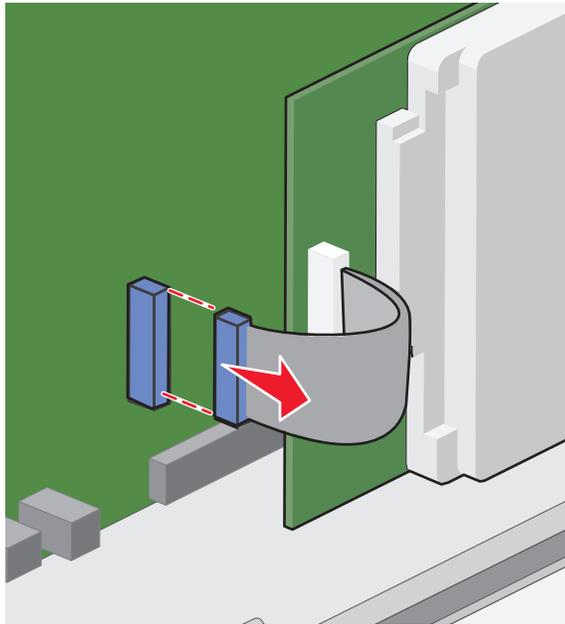
**4** Reattach the system board cover.

## Removing a printer hard disk

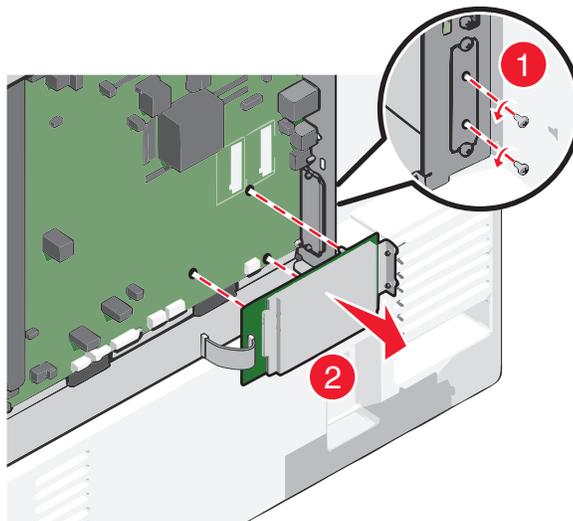
**Note:** This task requires a flathead screwdriver.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** System board electronic components are easily damaged by static electricity. Touch something metal on the printer before touching any system board electronic components or connectors.

- 1 Access the system board.  
For more information, see “Accessing the system board” on page 19.
- 2 Unplug the printer hard disk interface cable from the system board, leaving the cable attached to the printer hard disk. To unplug the cable, squeeze the paddle at the plug of the interface cable to disengage the latch before pulling the cable out.



- 3 Remove the screws while holding the printer hard disk in place, and then remove the printer hard disk.



- 4 Set the printer hard disk aside.
- 5 Reattach the system board cover.

## Order of installation

 **CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD:** Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using a high-capacity input tray, a duplex unit and an input option, or more than one input option. If you purchased a multifunction printer (MFP) that scans, copies, and faxes, you may need additional furniture. For more information, see [www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters](http://www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters).

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

Install the printer and any options you have purchased in the following order:

- Caster base
- Optional spacer
- Optional 550-sheet trays or 2,000-sheet high-capacity feeder
- Standard 550-sheet trays
- Printer

For information on installing a caster base, a 550- or 2,000-sheet optional tray, spacer, or any of the finishers, see the setup documentation that came with the option.

## Installing optional trays

The printer supports the following optional input sources:

- 550-sheet tray
- 2,000-sheet high-capacity feeder

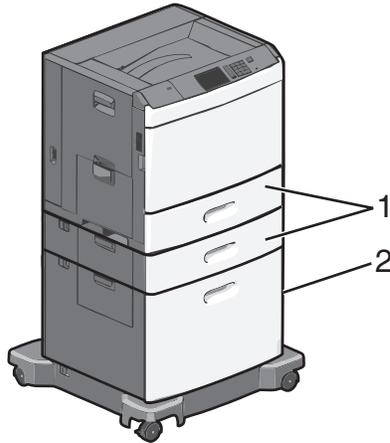
 **CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to lift it safely.

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** If you are accessing the system board or installing optional hardware or memory devices sometime after setting up the printer, then turn the printer off, and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before continuing. If you have any other devices attached to the printer, then turn them off as well, and unplug any cables going into the printer.

 **CAUTION—TIPPING HAZARD:** Floor-mounted configurations require additional furniture for stability. You must use either a printer stand or printer base if you are using a high-capacity input tray, a duplex unit and an input option, or more than one input option. If you purchased a multifunction printer (MFP) that scans, copies, and faxes, you may need additional furniture. For more information, see [www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters](http://www.lexmark.com/multifunctionprinters).

- 1 Unpack the optional tray, and then remove all packing material.
- 2 Place the tray near the printer.
- 3 Turn the printer off.
- 4 Align the printer to the tray, and then lower the printer into place.

**Note:** Optional trays lock together when stacked. When necessary, remove stacked trays one at a time from the top down.



1	Tray 1 and Tray 2 (550-sheet trays)
2	Tray 3 (2,000-sheet high-capacity feeder)

- 5 Turn the printer back on.
- 6 Set the printer software to recognize the optional input source. For more information, see “Updating available options in the printer driver” on page 38.

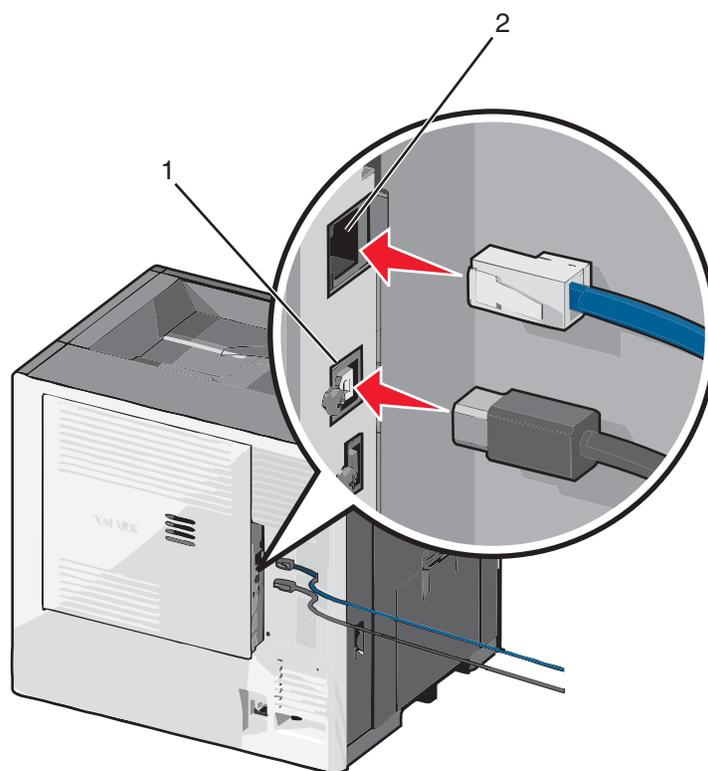
## Attaching cables

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** Do not use the fax feature during a lightning storm. Do not set up this product or make any electrical or cabling connections, such as the fax feature, power cord, or telephone, during a lightning storm.

Connect the printer to the computer using a USB cable or Ethernet cable.

Be sure to match the following:

- The USB symbol on the cable with the USB symbol on the printer
- The appropriate Ethernet cable to the Ethernet port



<b>1</b>	USB port <b>Warning—Potential Damage:</b> Do not touch the USB cable, any network adapter, or the printer in the area shown while actively printing. A loss of data or a malfunction can occur.
<b>2</b>	Ethernet port

## Verifying printer setup

Once all hardware and software options are installed and the printer is turned on, verify that the printer is set up correctly by printing the following:

- **Menu settings page**—Use this page to verify that all printer options are installed correctly. A list of installed options appears toward the bottom of the page. If an option you installed is not listed, then it is not installed correctly. Remove the option and install it again.
- **Network setup page**—If your printer is a network model and is attached to a network, print a network setup page to verify the network connection. This page also provides important information that aids network printing configuration.

## Printing a menu settings page

From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Reports > Menu Settings Page**

## Printing a network setup page

If the printer is attached to a network, then print a network setup page to verify the network connection. This page also provides important information that aids network printing configuration.

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Reports** > **Network Setup Page**

- 2 Check the first section of the network setup page, and confirm that the status is **Connected**.

If the status is **Not Connected**, then the LAN drop may not be active, or the network cable may be malfunctioning. Consult a system support person for a solution, and then print another network setup page.

## Setting up the printer software

### Installing the printer software

#### For Windows users

- 1 Close all open software programs.
- 2 Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD.  
Wait for the Welcome screen to appear.  
If the CD does not launch after a minute, then do the following:
  - a Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
  - b In the Start Search or Run box, type `D:\setup.exe`, where **D** is the letter of your CD or DVD drive.
- 3 Click **Recommended Install** and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.

#### For Macintosh users

- 1 Close all open software applications.
- 2 Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD, and then double-click the software installer package.
- 3 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

### Using the World Wide Web

- 1 Go to the Lexmark Web site at [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com).
- 2 From the Drivers & Downloads menu, click **Driver Finder**.
- 3 Select your printer, and then select your operating system.
- 4 Download the driver and then install it.

## Updating available options in the printer driver

Once the printer software and any options are installed, it may be necessary to manually add the options in the printer driver to make them available for print jobs.

## For Windows users

- 1 Open the Printers folder:
  - a Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
  - b In the Start Search or Run box, type `control printers`.
  - c Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.
- 2 Select your printer.
- 3 Right-click the printer, and then select **Properties**.
- 4 Click the **Configuration** tab.
- 5 Click **Update Now - Ask Printer** or manually add any installed hardware options under Configuration Options.
- 6 Click **Apply**.

## For Macintosh users

### In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

- 1 From the Apple menu, choose **System Preferences > Print & Fax**.
- 2 Select your printer, and then click **Options & Supplies**.
- 3 Click **Driver**, and then add any installed hardware options.
- 4 Click **OK**.

### In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

- 1 From the Finder desktop, choose **Go > Applications**.
- 2 Double-click **Utilities > Print Center** or **Printer Setup Utility**.
- 3 Select the printer, and then from the Printers menu, choose **Show Info**.
- 4 From the pop-up menu, choose **Installable Options**.
- 5 Add any installed hardware options, and then click **Apply Changes**.

## Setting up wireless printing

**Note:** A Service Set Identifier (SSID) is a name assigned to a wireless network. Wireless Encryption Protocol (WEP) and Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) are types of security used on a network.

## Information you will need to set up the printer on a wireless network

**Note:** Do not connect the installation or network cables until prompted to do so by the setup software.

- **SSID**—The SSID is also referred to as the network name.
- **Wireless Mode (or Network Mode)**—The mode will be either infrastructure or ad hoc.

- **Channel (for ad hoc networks)**—The channel defaults to auto for infrastructure networks.

Some ad hoc networks will also require the auto setting. Check with your system support person if you are not sure which channel to select.

- **Security Method**—There are three basic options for Security Method:

- WEP key

If your network uses more than one WEP key, enter up to four in the provided spaces. Select the key currently in use on the network by selecting the Default WEP Transmit Key.

or

- WPA or WPA2 passphrase

WPA includes encryption as an additional layer of security. The choices are AES or TKIP. Encryption must be set for the same type on the router and on the printer, or the printer will not be able to communicate on the network.

- No security

If your wireless network does not use any type of security, then you will not have any security information.

**Note:** Using an unsecured wireless network is not recommended.

If you are installing the printer on an 802.1X network using the Advanced method, then you may need the following:

- Authentication type
- Inner authentication type
- 802.1X username and password
- Certificates

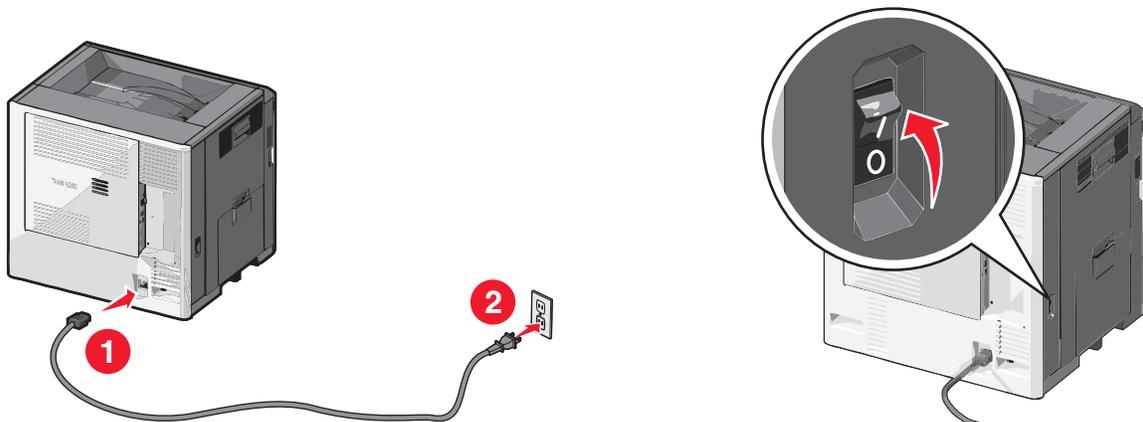
**Note:** For more information on configuring 802.1X security, see the *Networking Guide on the Software and Documentation CD*.

## Installing the printer on a wireless network (Windows)

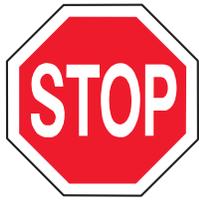
Before you install the printer on a wireless network, make sure:

- Your wireless network is set up and working properly.
- The computer you are using is connected to the same wireless network where you want to set up the printer.

- 1 Connect the power cable to the printer and then to a properly grounded electrical outlet, and then turn the printer on.



Additional printer setup

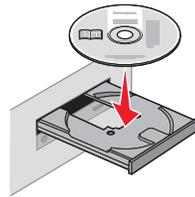


Make sure the printer and computer are fully on and ready.

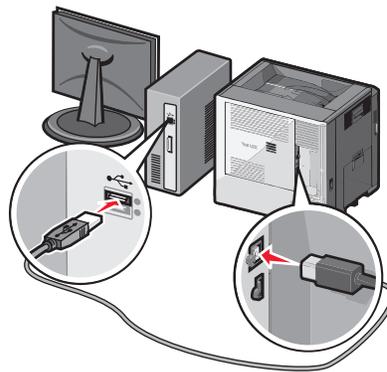


Do not connect the USB cable until instructed to do so on the computer screen.

- 2 Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD.



- 3 Click **Recommended Install**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.
- 4 Select **Wireless connection** when asked to choose a connection type.
- 5 From the Wireless Configuration dialog, select **Guided Setup**.  
**Note:** Choose **Advanced Setup** only if you want to customize your installation.
- 6 Temporarily connect a USB cable between the computer on the wireless network and the printer.



**Note:** After the printer is configured, the software will instruct you to disconnect the temporary USB cable so you can print wirelessly.

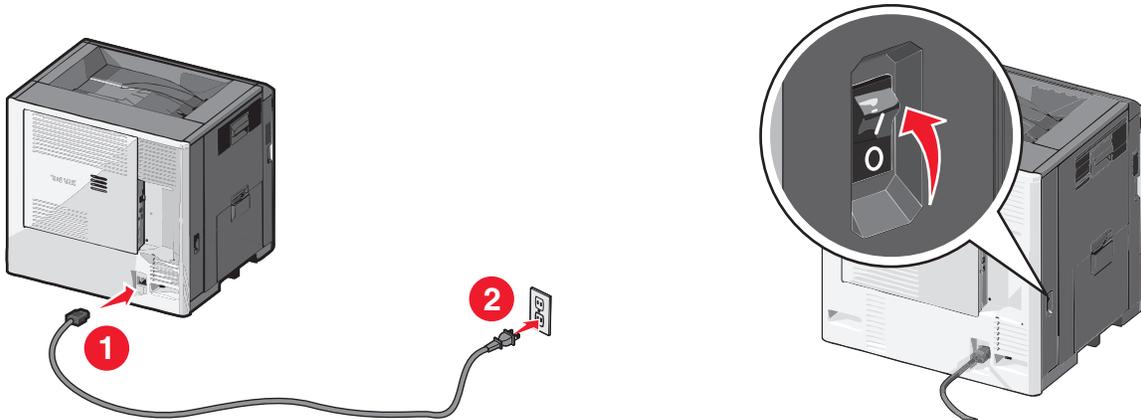
- 7 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.
- 8 To allow other computers on the wireless network to use the wireless printer, follow steps 2 through 6 and step 8 for each computer.

# Installing the printer on a wireless network (Macintosh)

Make sure to disconnect the Ethernet cable when installing the printer on a wireless network.

## Prepare to configure the printer

- 1 Locate the printer MAC address on the sheet that came with the printer.
- 2 Connect the power cable to the printer and then to a properly grounded electrical outlet, and then turn the printer on.



## Enter the printer information

- 1 Access the AirPort options:

### In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

From the Apple menu, navigate to:

**System Preferences > Network > AirPort**

### In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

From the Finder, navigate to:

**Applications > Internet Connect > AirPort**

- 2 From the Network Name pop-up menu, select **print server [yyyyyy]**, where the y's are the last six digits of the MAC address located on the MAC address sheet.
- 3 Open a Safari browser.
- 4 From the Bookmarks drop-down menu, select **Show** or **Show All Bookmarks**.
- 5 Under COLLECTIONS, select **Bonjour** or **Rendezvous**, and then double-click the printer name.  
**Note:** The application is referred to as *Rendezvous* in Mac OS X version 10.2, but is now called *Bonjour* by Apple Inc.
- 6 From the Embedded Web Server, navigate to where the wireless settings information are stored.

## Configure the printer for wireless access

- 1 Type the name of your network (SSID) in the appropriate field.
- 2 Select **Infrastructure** as your Network Mode if you are using a wireless router.
- 3 Select the type of security you want to use to protect your wireless network.
- 4 Enter the security information necessary for the printer to join your wireless network.
- 5 Click **Submit**.
- 6 Open the AirPort application on your computer:

### In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

From the Apple menu, navigate to:

**System Preferences > Network > AirPort**

### In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

From the Finder, navigate to:

**Applications > Internet Connect > AirPort**

- 7 From the Network pop-up menu, select the name of your wireless network.

## Configure your computer to use the printer wirelessly

To print on a network printer, each Macintosh user must install a custom *PostScript Printer Description* (PPD) file and create a printer in the Print Center or Printer Setup Utility.

- 1 Install a PPD file on the computer:
  - a Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD, and then double-click the installer package for the printer.
  - b Follow the instructions on the computer screen.
  - c Select a Destination, and then click **Continue**.
  - d From the Easy Install screen, click **Install**.
  - e Type the user password, and then click **OK**.  
All necessary software is installed on the computer.
  - f Click **Close** when installation is complete.

- 2 Add the printer:

- a For IP printing:

### In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

- 1 From the Apple menu, navigate to:  
**System Preferences > Print & Fax**
- 2 Click **+**, and then click the **IP** tab.
- 3 Type the IP address of your printer in the Address field, and then click **Add**.

### In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

- 1 From the Finder, navigate to:  
**Applications > Utilities**
- 2 Double-click **Printer Setup Utility** or **Print Center**.

- 3 From the Printer List, choose **Add**, and then click **IP Printer**.
- 4 Type the IP address of your printer in the Address field, and then click **Add**.

**b** For AppleTalk printing:

**Note:** Make sure AppleTalk is activated on your printer.

### In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

- 1 From the Apple menu, navigate to:  
**System Preferences > Print & Fax**
- 2 Click **+**, and then navigate to:  
**AppleTalk > select the printer from the list > Add**

### In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

- 1 From the Finder, navigate to:  
**Applications > Utilities**
- 2 Double-click **Printer Setup Utility** or **Print Center**.
- 3 From the Printer List, click **Add**.
- 4 Click **Default Browser** tab > **More Printers**.
- 5 From the first pop-up menu, select **AppleTalk**.
- 6 From the second pop-up menu, select **Local AppleTalk Zone**.
- 7 Select the printer from the list, and then click **Add**.

## Installing the printer on a wired network

These instructions apply to Ethernet and fiber optic network connections.

**Note:** Make sure you have completed the initial setup of the printer.

### For Windows users

- 1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD.

Wait for the Welcome screen to appear.

If the CD does not launch after a minute, then do the following:

- a** Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
- b** In the Start Search or Run box, type **D:\setup.exe**, where **D** is the letter of your CD or DVD drive.

- 2 Click **Recommended Install**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.

**Note:** To configure the printer using a static IP address, using IPv6, or to configure printers using scripts, select **Administrator Tools**.

- 3 Select **Ethernet connection**, and then click **Continue**.
- 4 Follow the instructions on the computer screen, and then select **Guided Setup (Recommended)**.
- 5 Attach the appropriate cable to the computer and to the printer when instructed to do so.

6 Select your printer from the list, and then click **Continue**.

**Note:** If your configured printer does not appear in the list, then click **Modify Search**.

7 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

## For Macintosh users

1 Allow the network DHCP server to assign an IP address to the printer.

2 Obtain the printer IP address.

a From the printer, print a network setup page.

For more information, see “Printing a network setup page” on page 38.

b In the TCP/IP section, look for **IP Address**.

**Note:** You will need the IP address if you are configuring access for computers on a different subnet than the printer.

3 Install the drivers, and then add the printer.

a Install a PPD file on the computer:

1 Insert the *Software and Documentation* CD, and then double-click the installer package for the printer.

2 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

3 Select a Destination, and then click **Continue**.

4 From the Easy Install screen, click **Install**.

5 Type the user password, and then click **OK**.

All the necessary software is installed on the computer.

6 Click **Close** when installation is complete.

b Add the printer:

- For IP printing:

### In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

1 From the Apple menu, navigate to:

**System Preferences > Print & Fax**

2 Click +, and then click the **IP** tab.

3 Type the IP address of your printer in the Address field, and then click **Add**.

### In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

1 From the Finder, navigate to:

**Applications > Utilities**

2 Double-click **Printer Setup Utility** or **Print Center**.

3 From the Printer List, click **Add**, and then click **IP Printer**.

4 Type in the IP address of your printer in the Address field, and then click **Add**.

- For AppleTalk printing:

**Note:** Make sure AppleTalk is activated on your printer.

## In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

- 1 From the Apple menu, navigate to:  
**System Preferences > Print & Fax**
- 2 Click +, and then navigate to:  
**AppleTalk > select the printer from the list > Add**

## In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

- 1 From the Finder, navigate to:  
**Applications > Utilities**
- 2 Double-click **Printer Setup Utility** or **Print Center**.
- 3 From the Printer List, click **Add**.
- 4 Click **Default Browser** tab > **More Printers**.
- 5 From the first pop-up menu, select **AppleTalk**.
- 6 From the second pop-up menu, select **Local AppleTalk Zone**.
- 7 Select the printer from the list, and then click **Add**.

**Note:** If the printer does not show up in the list, you may need to add it using the IP address. For more information, contact your system support person.

# Changing port settings after installing a new network Internal Solutions Port

When a new Lexmark Internal Solutions Port (ISP) is installed in the printer, the printer configurations on computers that access the printer must be updated since the printer will be assigned a new IP address. All computers that access the printer must be updated with this new IP address.

### Notes:

- If the printer has a static IP address, then you do not need to make any changes to the computer configurations.
- If the computers are configured to use network name that will stay the same, instead of by IP address, then you do not need to make any changes to your computer configurations.
- If you are adding a wireless ISP to a printer previously configured for a wired connection, then make sure the wired network is disconnected when you configure the printer to operate wirelessly. If the wired connection remains connected, then the wireless configuration will complete, but the wireless ISP will not be active. In the event that the printer was configured for a wireless ISP while still attached to a wired connection, disconnect the wired connection, turn the printer off, and then turn the printer back on again. This will enable the wireless ISP.
- Only one network connection at a time is active. If you want to switch the connection type between wired and wireless, you must first turn the printer off, connect the cable (to switch to a wired connection) or disconnect the cable (to switch to a wireless connection), and then turn the printer on.

## For Windows users

- 1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

- 2 Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
- 3 In the Start Search or Run box, type `control printers`.
- 4 Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.  
The printer folder opens.
- 5 Locate the printer that has changed.  
**Note:** If there is more than one copy of the printer, then update all of them with the new IP address.
- 6 Right-click the printer.
- 7 Click **Properties** > **Ports** tab.
- 8 Select the port from the list, and then click **Configure Port**.
- 9 Type the new IP address in the "Printer Name or IP Address" field.
- 10 Click **OK** > **Close**.

## For Macintosh users

- 1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.  
If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:
  - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
  - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.  
**Note:** You will need the IP address if you are configuring access for computers on a different subnet than the printer.
- 2 Add the printer:
  - For IP printing:

### In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later

- a From the Apple menu, navigate to:  
**System Preferences** > **Print & Fax**
- b Click **+**, and then click the **IP** tab.
- c Type the IP address of your printer in the Address field, and then click **Add**.

### In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

- a From the Finder, navigate to:  
**Applications** > **Utilities**
  - b Double-click **Printer Setup Utility** or **Print Center**.
  - c From the Printer List, click **Add**, and then click **IP Printer**.
  - d Type the IP address of your printer in the Address field, and then click **Add**.
- For AppleTalk printing:  
**Note:** Make sure AppleTalk is activated on your printer.

## In Mac OS X version 10.5

- a From the Apple menu, navigate to:  
**System Preferences > Print & Fax**
- b Click **+**, and then navigate to:  
**AppleTalk > select the printer from the list > Add**

## In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier

- a From the Finder, navigate to:  
**Applications > Utilities**
- b Double-click **Printer Setup Utility** or **Print Center**.
- c From the Printer List, click **Add**.
- d Click the **Default Browser** tab > **More Printers**.
- e From the first pop-up menu, select **AppleTalk**.
- f From the second pop-up menu, select **Local AppleTalk Zone**.
- g Select the printer from the list, and then click **Add**.

# Setting up serial printing

In serial printing, data is transferred one bit at a time. Although serial printing is usually slower than parallel printing, it is the preferred option when there is a great deal of distance between the printer and computer or when an interface with a better transfer rate is not available.

After installing the serial or communication (COM) port, you will need to configure the printer and the computer so they can communicate. Make sure you have connected the serial cable to the COM port on your printer.

### 1 Set the parameters in the printer:

- a From the printer control panel, navigate to the menu with port settings.
- b Locate the submenu with serial port settings.
- c Make any necessary changes to the serial settings.
- d Save the new settings, and then print a menu settings page.

### 2 Install the printer driver:

- a Insert the *Software and Documentation CD*.  
Wait for the Welcome screen to appear.  
If the CD does not launch after a minute, then do the following:
  - 1 Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
  - 2 In the Start Search or Run box, type **D:\setup.exe**, where **D** is the letter of your CD or DVD drive.
- b Click **Custom Install**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen.
- c From the Configure Printer Connection dialog, select **Connect through a port discovered on your computer**, and then select a port.
- d If the port is not on the list, then click **Refresh** or navigate to:  
**Add port > select a port type > enter necessary information > OK**
- e Click **Continue**.
  - 1 If you want to add another printer, then click **Add Another**.
  - 2 If you want to make changes, then select a printer, and then click **Edit**.

**3** Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

**f** Click **Finish**.

**3** Set the COM port parameters:

After installing the printer driver, set the serial parameters in the COM port assigned to the printer driver.

**Note:** Make sure the serial parameters in the COM port match the serial parameters you set in the printer.

**a** Open the Device Manager.

**1** Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.

**2** In the Start Search or Run box, type `devmgmt.msc`.

**3** Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.

**b** Look for Ports, and then click + to expand the list of available ports.

**c** Right-click the COM port where you attached the serial cable to your computer (example: COM1).

**d** Click **Properties**.

**e** On the Port Settings tab, set the serial parameters to the same serial parameters in the printer.

Check the serial heading of the menu settings page for the printer settings.

**f** Click **OK**, and then close all the windows.

**g** Print a test page to verify printer installation.

# Setting up and using the Home Screen applications

## Making the home screen applications work for you

Button	Function
<p><b>Forms and Favorites</b></p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Allows you to access frequently used forms and bookmarks.</li><li>• Creates your own index of forms, information sheets, and other materials you print often.</li></ul> <p>To print a form, see “Printing forms” on page 55.</p>
<p><b>Eco-Settings</b></p> 	<p>Alters printer settings to save energy and paper.</p>
<p><b>Background and Idle Screen</b></p> 	<p>Allows you to customize the background and idle screen of your printer home screen.</p>
<p><b>Showroom</b></p> 	<p>Allows you to view the special features of your printer in a slide show.</p>

You can set up and use the home screen applications by using the home screen buttons or the Embedded Web Server. To open the Embedded Web Server, type your printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Network/Ports menu
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

## Configuring the home screen or idle screen

### Changing the home screen background using the printer control panel

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:  
**Change Background** > select background to use
- 2 Touch .

### Changing the home screen background image using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 From the Embedded Web Server, click **Settings** > **Solutions** > **Embedded Solutions** > **Background and Idle Screen** > **Configure**.
- 2 In the Background Images field, select the image you want to use, or click **Browse** to browse to the graphic you want to use, and then click **Open**.
- 3 Click **Apply**.

### Changing the idle screen settings using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 From the Embedded Web Server, click **Settings** > **Solutions** > **Embedded Solutions** > **Background and Idle Screen** > **Configure**.
- 2 Beside Idle Screen Images, click **Add**.  
**Note:** You can also edit and delete idle screen images.
- 3 Beside Image, click **Browse** to browse to the graphic you want to use, and then click **Open**.
- 4 Click **Apply**.
- 5 Repeat steps 2–4 to add up to ten idle screen images.
- 6 In the Idle Screen Settings, make sure **Enable** is selected.
- 7 In the Start Time field, enter the number of seconds the printer is idle before the idle screen images appear.
- 8 In the Image Interval field, enter the number of seconds between image changes.
- 9 Click **Apply**.

## Changing display icons and labels

You can change the icons and associated text that appear on the printer home screen. If you do not want to use the default icons for an application, you can import new icons to be used for both the pressed and unpressed button states.

**Note:** For information about compatible image file types and recommended file sizes, see the mouse-over help next to each field.

- 1 From the Embedded Web Server, click **Settings > Solutions > Embedded Solutions**.
- 2 From Installed Solutions, click the name of the application you want to configure.
- 3 Click **Configure**.
- 4 Select each field you want to change.
- 5 Enter labels or browse to the appropriate image file.
- 6 Click **Apply** to save the settings or **Reset** to return to the previous settings.

## Configuring Eco-Settings

The Eco-Settings application lets you select energy- and paper-saving settings that can help reduce the environmental impact of your printer.

### Configuring Eco-Settings using the printer control panel

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:

**Eco-Settings > Eco-Mode > select a setting > **

**Notes:**

- If your printer model supports duplex printing, you will be able to print on both sides of the paper. Choose **Paper** to set 2-Sided Printing.
- Choose **Energy/Paper** to automatically set 2-Sided Printing and Sleep Mode to default values. You will not be able to modify those settings.

- 2 Touch **2-Sided Printing**, and then touch **1-Sided, 2-Sided Long Edge**, or **2-Sided Short Edge**.
- 3 Touch .
- 4 Touch **Quiet Mode**, and then touch **Off** or **On**.
- 5 Touch .

**Note:** In **Quiet Mode**, the printer runs at a speed that is slower than the default speed. You should notice an increase in processing time for your jobs.

- a Touch **Standby Mode** to adjust the time (1–240 minutes) the printer waits before entering a standby mode.
- b Touch **Sleep Mode** to adjust the time (1–240 minutes) the printer waits before entering a sleep mode.

**Note:** Standby Mode will engage automatically when the printer is in Sleep mode.

- c Touch **Screen Brightness** to adjust the screen brightness settings (20–100%).
- d Touch **Darkness** to adjust the darkness settings of your printed documents.

6 Touch **Advanced Options** to configure Schedule Power Modes.

To add a scheduled energy-saving task:

- a Touch the **Action** left or right arrow to select an energy-saving task. You may choose **Sleep Mode**, **Hibernation Mode**, **Wake Device – Allow Sleep Mode**, or **Wake Device – Do Not Allow Sleep Mode**.
- b Touch the **Time** icon to set the time to perform the energy-saving task.
- c Touch the **Day(s)** left or right arrow to specify the day.
- d Touch **Add** to save the configuration.

7 Touch .

## Configuring Eco-Settings using the Embedded Web Server

### Scheduling energy-saving tasks

- 1 From the Embedded Web Server, click **Settings > Solutions > Embedded Solutions > Eco-Settings > Configure**.
- 2 Beside Scheduled Power Modes field, click **Add**.
- 3 From the Action list, choose an energy-saving task. You may choose **Wake Device – Do Not Allow Sleep Mode**, **Sleep Mode**, **Wake Device – Allow Sleep Mode**, or **Hibernate**.
- 4 From the Time field, choose the time to perform the energy-saving task.
- 5 From the Days field, choose the days to perform the energy-saving task
- 6 Click **Apply** to save changes, or **Restore Defaults** to return all settings to default values.

### Configuring home screen icons and text

- 1 From the Embedded Web Server, click **Settings > Solutions > Embedded Solutions > Eco-Settings > Configure**.
- 2 In the Text field, type the new button text that you want to appear on the home screen.
- 3 In the Icon field, type a path or browse to the graphic that you want to appear when the button on the home screen is not pressed.  
**Note:** Use a GIF, JPEG, or PNG image with dimensions of 120 x 75 pixels and is 11KB or smaller.
- 4 In the Icon When Pressed field, type a path or browse to the graphic you want to appear when the button on the home screen is pressed.  
**Note:** Use a GIF, JPEG, or PNG image with dimensions of 120 x 75 pixels and is 11KB or smaller.
- 5 Click **Apply**.

**Note:** To restore the appearance of the default button on the home screen, select **Reset to default value** under the "Home Screen Button: Icon" field or the "Home Screen Button: Icon When Pressed" field, and then click **Apply**.

## Configuring energy- and paper-saving options

- 1 From the Embedded Web Server, click **Settings > Solutions > Embedded Solutions > Eco-Settings > Configure**.
- 2 Adjust the following settings as necessary:
  - **Eco Mode**—Choose **Off**, **Energy** (to reduce energy use, especially when the printer is idle), **Energy/Paper**, or **Paper**.

**Note:** If your printer model supports duplex printing, you will be able to print on both sides of the paper. Choosing **Energy/Paper** will automatically set 2-Sided Printing and Sleep Mode to default values. Additional changes made to these settings through the Embedded Web Server will be ignored.
  - **Standby Mode**—Type the number of minutes (1–240) the printer waits before the printer enters a standby mode.
  - **Sleep Mode**—Type the number of minutes (1–240) the printer waits before the printer enters a sleep mode.

**Note:** Standby Mode will automatically engage when the printer is in Sleep Mode.
  - **Screen Brightness**—Type the desired percentage for screen brightness (20–100).
  - **2-Sided Printing**—Choose **1-Sided**, **2-Sided Long Edge**, or **2-Sided Short Edge**.
  - **Darkness** or **Toner Darkness**—Choose a toner darkness value (1–5).
  - **Quiet Mode**—Enable this option to reduce the amount of noise produced by the printer.

**Note:** When this is selected, printer engine motors do not start until a print job is ready to print. You may notice a short delay before the first page is printed, as well as a reduction in processing speed.
  - **Lock UI**— Enable this option to prevent users from changing Eco-Settings from the printer control panel.
- 3 Click **Apply** to save changes, or **Restore Defaults** to return all settings to default values.

## Exporting or importing configuration settings

You can export configuration settings into a text file that can then be imported and then used to apply the settings to one or more additional printers.

- 1 From the Embedded Web Server, click **Settings > Solutions > Embedded Solutions > Eco-Settings > Configure**.
- 2 To export your current settings, click **Export**, and then follow the instructions on the computer screen. You may enter a unique file name or use the default file name.
- 3 To import a previously saved configuration file, click **Import**. You may load or preview this file.

## Configuring Forms and Favorites

The Forms and Favorites solution provides users with quick and easy access to frequently used forms or other information that is regularly printed.

The printer Bookmark function is used to create a link to a form or electronic file at a predetermined URL or network location. These files are then accessed from the Forms and Favorites icon.

When adding bookmarks from the printer Embedded Web Server, more configuration options are available than when adding bookmarks from the printer control panel.

## Adding bookmarks using the printer control panel

**Note:** Bookmarks added from the printer control panel must be edited from the printer Embedded Web Server.

1 From the printer control panel, navigate to:

**Forms and Favorites > Create Bookmark**

2 Enter a name for the new bookmark, and then touch **Enter**.

This name will be displayed in the Forms menu when selecting a form to print.

3 Enter the URL or network location of the form.

**Note:** The printer does not verify the validity of the URL or network location, so it is important to make sure that the location is valid and entered correctly.

4 Touch .

## Adding bookmarks using the Embedded Web Server

1 From the Embedded Web Server, click **Settings > Bookmark Setup > New Bookmark**.

2 In the Bookmark Properties section, type a name and URL for the bookmark.

3 Configure optional bookmark settings:

- To require users to enter a PIN to print the bookmark, type a four-digit number in the PIN field.
- To change the default printer settings, adjust the settings in the Finishing Menu and Paper sections.
- If the bookmark URL refers to an HTML document, then you can change the default margin by changing the setting in the HTML Properties section. You can also select whether to Print Background Images in the HTML Properties section.
- If the bookmark URL refers to a PDF document, then you can select whether the document should Scale to Fit when printed in the PDF Properties section.

4 Click **Submit** to save the new bookmark.

## Printing forms

1 From the printer touch screen, touch **Forms and Favorites**.

2 Select the form from the list, and then enter the number of copies.

3 Touch .

# Exporting and importing a configuration using the Embedded Web Server

You can export configuration settings into a text file that can then be imported and used to apply the settings to one or more additional printers.

## Exporting a configuration

- 1 From the Embedded Web Server, click **Settings > Solutions > Embedded Solutions**.
- 2 From Installed Solutions, click the name of the application you want to configure.
- 3 Click **Configure > Export**.
- 4 Follow the instructions in the computer screen to save the configuration file, and then enter a unique file name or use the default name.

**Note:** If a **JVM Out of Memory** error occurs, then repeat the export until the settings file is saved.

## Importing a configuration

- 1 From the Embedded Web Server, click **Settings > Solutions > Embedded Solutions**.
- 2 From Installed Solutions, click the name of the application you want to configure.
- 3 Click **Configure > Import**.
- 4 Browse to the saved configuration file, and then load or preview it.

**Note:** If a timeout occurs and a blank screen appears, refresh the browser, and then click **Apply**.

# Minimizing your printer's environmental impact

Lexmark is committed to environmental sustainability and is continually improving its printers to reduce their impact on the environment. We design with the environment in mind, engineer our packaging to reduce materials, and provide collection and recycling programs. For more information, see:

- The Notices chapter
- The Environmental Sustainability section of the Lexmark Web site at [www.lexmark.com/environment](http://www.lexmark.com/environment)
- The Lexmark recycling program at [www.lexmark.com/recycle](http://www.lexmark.com/recycle)

By selecting certain printer settings or tasks, you may be able to reduce your printer's impact even further. This chapter outlines the settings and tasks that may yield a greater environmental benefit.

## Saving paper and toner

Studies show that as much as 80% of the carbon footprint of a printer is related to paper usage. You can significantly reduce your carbon footprint by using recycled paper and the following printing suggestions, such as printing on both sides of the paper and printing multiple pages on one side of a sheet of paper.

For information on how you can quickly save paper and energy using one printer setting, see “Using Eco-Mode” on page 58.

### Using recycled paper

As an environmentally conscious company, Lexmark supports the use of recycled office paper produced specifically for use in laser printers. For more information on recycled papers that work well with your printer, see “Using recycled paper and other office papers” on page 75.

### Conserving supplies

#### Use both sides of the paper

If your printer model supports duplex printing, you can control whether print appears on one or two sides of the paper by selecting **2-sided printing** from the Print dialog or from the Lexmark Toolbar.

#### Place multiple pages on one sheet of paper

You can print up to 16 consecutive pages of a multiple-page document onto one side of a single sheet of paper by selecting a setting from the Multipage printing (N-Up) section of the Print dialog screen.

#### Check your first draft for accuracy

Before printing or making multiple copies of a document:

- Use the preview feature, which you can select from the Print dialog or from the Lexmark Toolbar to see how the document will look like before you print it.
- Print one copy of the document to check its content and format for accuracy.

## Avoid paper jams

Correctly set the paper type and size to avoid paper jams. For more information, see “Avoiding jams” on page 167.

## Print in black and white

To print all text and graphics using only the black print cartridge, set the printer to Black Only. For more information, see “Printing in black and white” on page 86.

# Saving energy

## Using Eco-Mode

**1** Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

**2** Click **Settings > General Settings > Eco-Mode > select a setting > Submit**.

Choose	To
<b>Off</b>	Use factory default settings for all settings associated with Eco-Mode. This setting supports the performance specifications of your printer.
<b>Energy</b>	Reduce energy use, especially when the printer is idle. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The printer enters Sleep mode after one minute of inactivity.</li><li>• When the printer enters Sleep mode, the printer control panel display is turned off.</li></ul>
<b>Energy/Paper</b>	Use all the settings associated with Energy mode and Paper mode.
<b>Paper</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Enable the automatic duplex feature.</li><li>• Turn off print log features.</li></ul>

## Reducing printer noise

To select a Quiet Mode setting using the Embedded Web Server:

**1** Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

**2** Click **Settings > General Settings > Quiet Mode > select a setting > Submit**

Choose	To
Off <b>Note:</b> Selecting <b>Photo</b> from the driver may disable Quiet Mode.	Use factory default settings. This setting supports the performance specifications of your printer.
On	Reduce printer noise. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Print jobs will process at reduced speed.</li> <li>• Fans run at reduced speed or are turned off.</li> <li>• If your printer has faxing capability, fax sounds are reduced or disabled, including those made by the fax speaker and ringer. The fax is placed in standby mode.</li> <li>• The alarm control and cartridge alarm sounds are turned off.</li> </ul>

## Adjusting Sleep Mode

To save energy, you can decrease the number of minutes before the printer enters Sleep Mode.

Available settings range from 1–240 minutes. The factory default setting is 30 minutes.

## Using the Embedded Web Server

**1** Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

**2** Click **Settings > General Settings > Timeouts**.

**3** In the Sleep Mode field, enter the number of minutes you want the printer to wait before it enters Sleep Mode.

**4** Click **Submit**.

## Using the printer control panel

**1** From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Settings > General Settings > Timeouts > Sleep Mode**

**2** In the Sleep Mode field, select the number of minutes you want the printer to wait before it enters Sleep Mode.

**3** Touch .

## Using Hibernate Mode

Hibernate is an ultra-low power operating mode. When operating in Hibernate mode, all other systems and devices are powered down safely.

## Using the Embedded Web Server

**1** Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

**2** Click **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Sleep Button Settings**.

**3** From the Press Sleep Button or Press and Hold Sleep Button drop-down, select **Hibernate**.

**4** Click **Submit**.

## Using the printer control panel

**1** From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Press Sleep Button** or **Press and Hold Sleep Button** > **Hibernate**

**2** Touch .

## Adjusting the brightness of the display

To save energy, or if you are have trouble reading your display, adjust the brightness of the display.

Available settings range from 20–100. The factory default setting is 100.

## Using the Embedded Web Server

**1** Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

**2** Click **Settings** > **General Settings**.

**3** In the Screen Brightness field, enter the brightness percentage you want for the display.

**4** Click **Submit**.

## Using the printer control panel

**1** From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Settings** > **General Settings**

**2** Touch the down arrow until **Screen Brightness** appears, and then select a setting.

**3** Touch .

## Recycling

Lexmark provides collection programs and environmentally progressive approaches to recycling. For more information, see:

- The Notices chapter
- The Environmental Sustainability section of the Lexmark Web site at [www.lexmark.com/environment](http://www.lexmark.com/environment)
- The Lexmark recycling program at [www.lexmark.com/recycle](http://www.lexmark.com/recycle)

## Recycling Lexmark products

To return Lexmark products for recycling:

- 1 Visit our Web site at [www.lexmark.com/recycle](http://www.lexmark.com/recycle).
- 2 Find the product type you want to recycle, and then select your country or region from the list.
- 3 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

## Recycling Lexmark packaging

Lexmark continually strives to minimize packaging. Less packaging helps to ensure that Lexmark printers are transported in the most efficient and environmentally sensitive manner and that there is less packaging to dispose of. These efficiencies result in fewer greenhouse emissions, energy savings, and natural resource savings.

Lexmark cartons are 100% recyclable where corrugated recycling facilities exist. Facilities may not exist in your area.

The foam used in Lexmark packaging is recyclable where foam recycling facilities exist. Facilities may not exist in your area.

When you return a cartridge to Lexmark, you can reuse the box that the cartridge came in. Lexmark will recycle the box.

## Returning Lexmark cartridges for reuse or recycling

The Lexmark Cartridge Collection Program diverts millions of Lexmark cartridges from landfills annually by making it both easy and free for Lexmark customers to return used cartridges to Lexmark for reuse or recycling. One hundred percent of the empty cartridges returned to Lexmark are either reused or demanufactured for recycling. Boxes used to return the cartridges are also recycled.

To return Lexmark cartridges for reuse or recycling, follow the instructions that came with your printer or cartridge and use the pre-paid shipping label. You can also:

- 1 Visit our Web site at [www.lexmark.com/recycle](http://www.lexmark.com/recycle).
- 2 From the Toner Cartridges section, select your country from the list.
- 3 Follow the instructions on the computer screen.

# Loading paper and specialty media

This section explains how to load the 550-sheet tray, an optional 2,000-sheet tray, a multipurpose feeder, and an optional 550-sheet specialty media drawer. It also includes information about paper orientation, setting the Paper Size and Paper Type, and linking and unlinking trays.

## Setting the paper size and type

The Paper Size setting is automatically sensed according to the position of the paper guides in each tray except the multipurpose feeder. The Paper Size setting for the multipurpose feeder must be set manually from the Paper Size menu. The Paper Type setting must be set manually for all trays that do not contain plain paper.

From the home screen navigate to:

 > **Paper Menu** > **Paper Size/Type** > select a tray > select the paper size or type > 

The factory default Paper Type setting is Plain Paper.

## Configuring Universal paper settings

The Universal Paper Size is a user-defined setting that lets you print on paper sizes that are not preset in the printer menus. Set the Paper Size for the specified tray to Universal when the size you want is not available from the Paper Size menu. Then, specify all of the following Universal size settings for your paper:

- Units of Measure
- Portrait Width
- Portrait Height

### Notes:

- The largest supported Universal size is 216 x 1219 mm (8.5 x 48 in.).
- The smallest supported Universal size is 76 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in.) and loaded in the multipurpose feeder only.

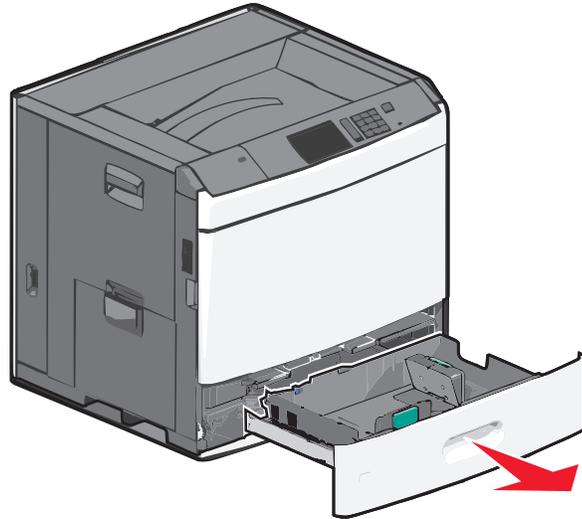
From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Paper Menu** > **Universal Setup** > **Units of Measure** > select unit of measure > **Portrait Width** or **Portrait Height** > select width or height > 

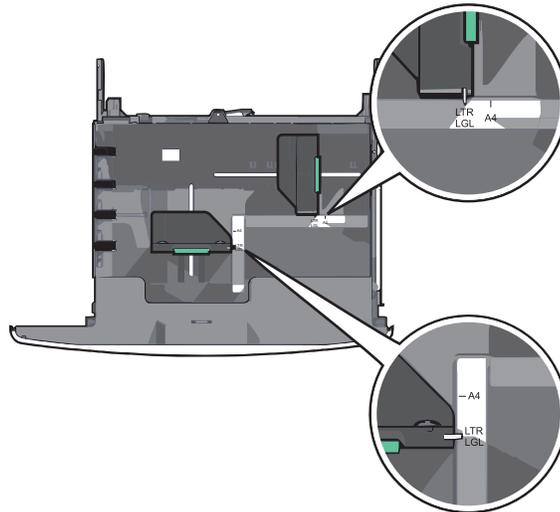
# Loading the standard or optional 550-sheet tray

The printer has one standard 550-sheet tray (Tray 1), and may have one or more optional 550-sheet trays. All 550-sheet trays support the same paper sizes and types.

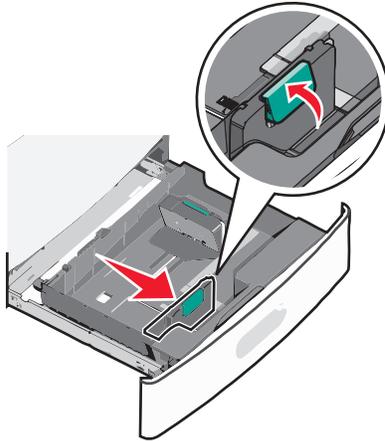
- 1 Pull the tray out.



Notice the size indicators on the bottom of the tray. Use these indicators to help position the length and width guides.

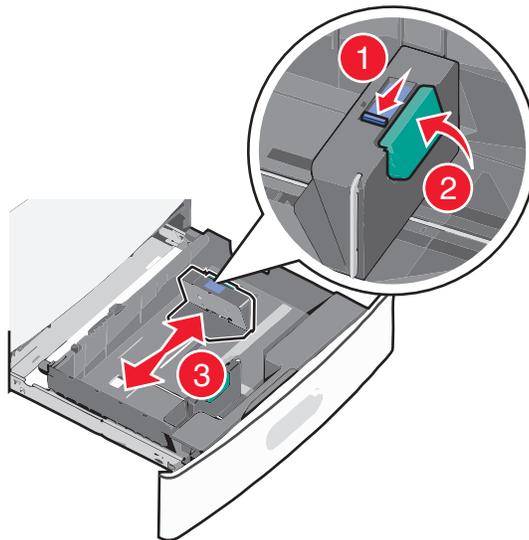


2 Squeeze and then slide the width guide to the correct position for the paper size you are loading.

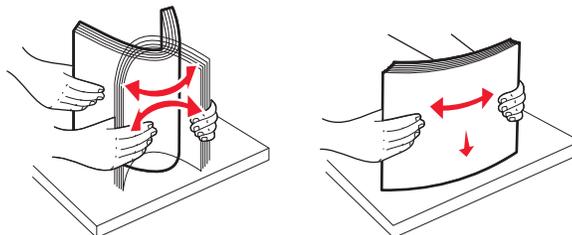


3 Squeeze and then slide the length guide to the correct position for the paper size you are loading.

**Note:** The length guide has a locking device. To unlock, slide the button on top of the length guide down. To lock, slide the button up when a length has been selected.



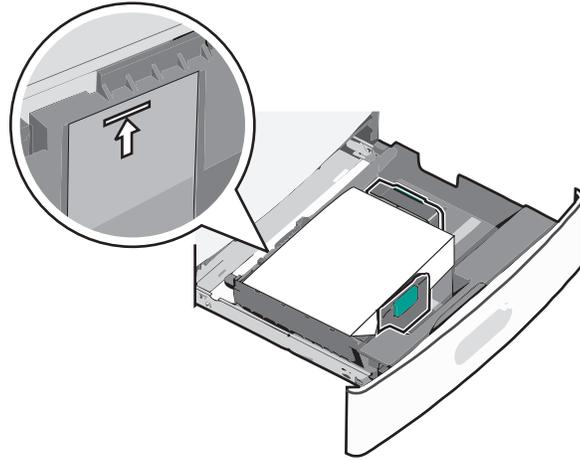
4 Flex the sheets back and forth to loosen them. Do not fold or crease the paper. Straighten the edges on a level surface.



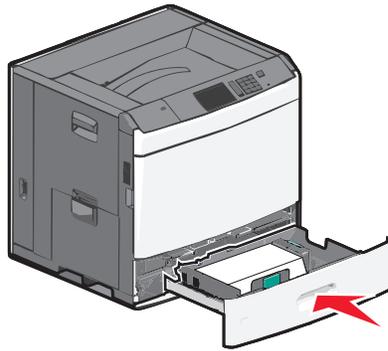
5 Load the paper stack with the recommended print side faceup.

**Notes:**

- Place print side facedown for duplex printing.
- Place pre-punched paper with the holes toward the front of the tray.
- Place letterheads faceup with the header on the left side of the tray.
- Place letterheads facedown with the header on the right side of the tray for duplex printing.
- Make sure the paper is below the maximum fill line located on the edge of the paper tray. Overloading the tray can cause paper jams and possible printer damage.



**6** Insert the tray.

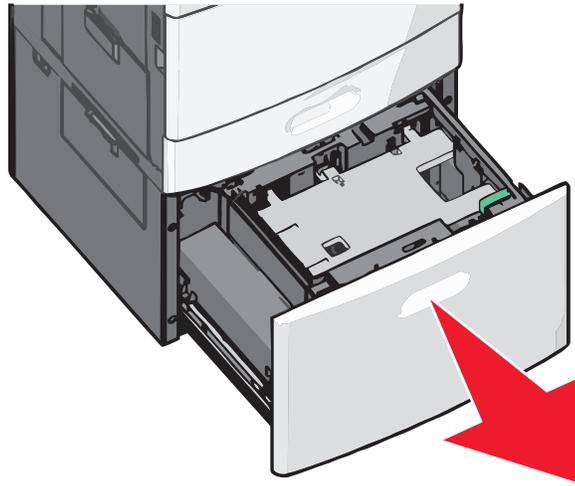


**7** From the printer control panel, verify the Paper Size and Paper Type for the tray based on the paper you loaded.

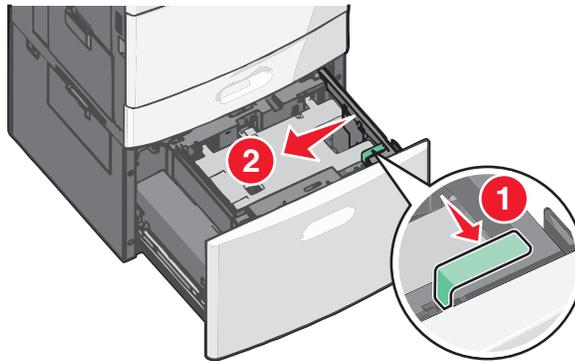
# Loading the 2000-sheet high-capacity feeder

The high-capacity feeder can hold up to 2,000 sheets of letter-, A4-, and legal-size paper (80 g/m<sup>2</sup> or 20 lb).

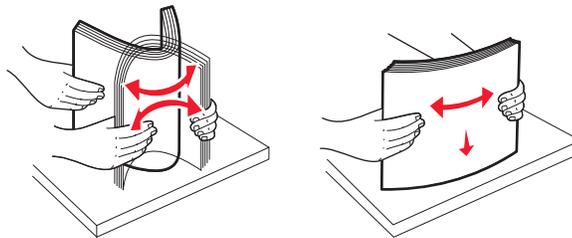
- 1 Pull the tray out.



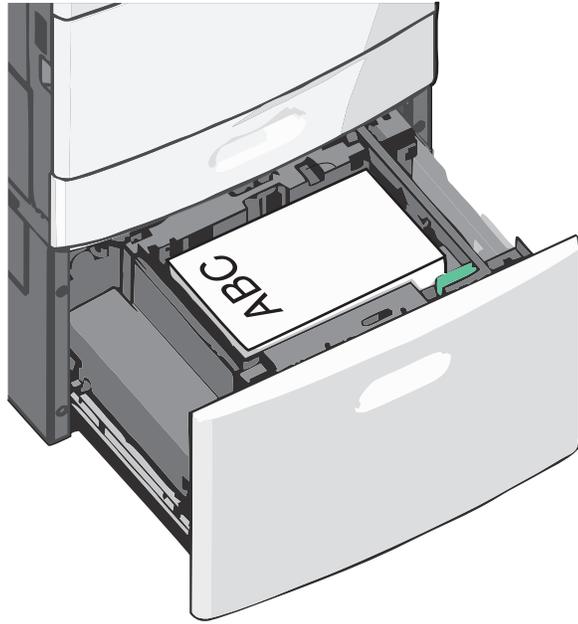
- 2 Adjust the width guide as necessary.



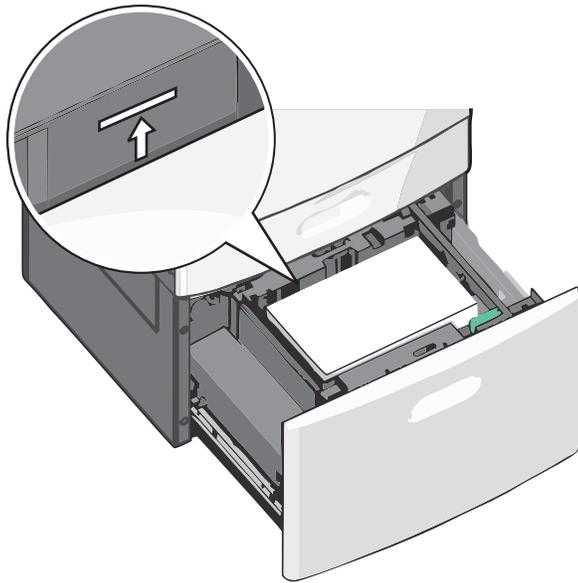
- 3 Flex the sheets back and forth to loosen them. Do not fold or crease the paper. Straighten the edges on a level surface.



4 Load paper into the tray with the print side faceup.



**Note:** Make sure the paper is below the maximum fill line located on the edge of the paper tray. Overloading the tray can cause paper jams and possible printer damage.



**Notes:**

- Place pre-punched paper with the holes toward the front of the tray.
- Place letterheads faceup with the header on the left side of the tray.
- Place letterheads facedown with the header on the right side of the tray for duplex printing.

5 Insert the tray.

# Loading the multipurpose feeder

The multipurpose feeder can hold several sizes and types of print media, such as transparencies, labels, card stock, and envelopes. It can be used for single-page or manual printing, or as an additional tray.

The multipurpose feeder can hold approximately:

- 100 sheets of 75-g/m<sup>2</sup> (20-lb) paper
- 10 envelopes
- 75 transparencies

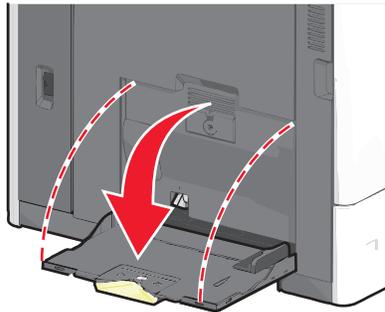
The multipurpose feeder accepts paper or specialty media within the following dimensions:

- Width—89 mm (3.5 in.) to 229 mm (9.02 in.)
- Length—127 mm (5 in.) to 1270 mm (50 in.)

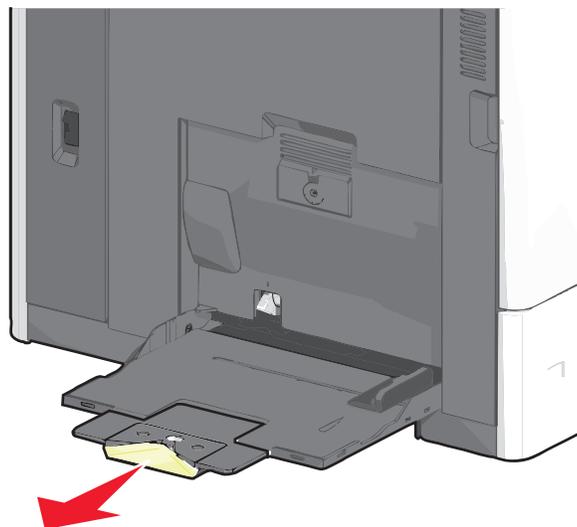
**Note:** Maximum width and length can be applied only to short-edge feeding.

**Note:** Do not add or remove paper or specialty media when the printer is printing from the multipurpose feeder or when the printer control panel indicator light is blinking. Doing so may cause a jam.

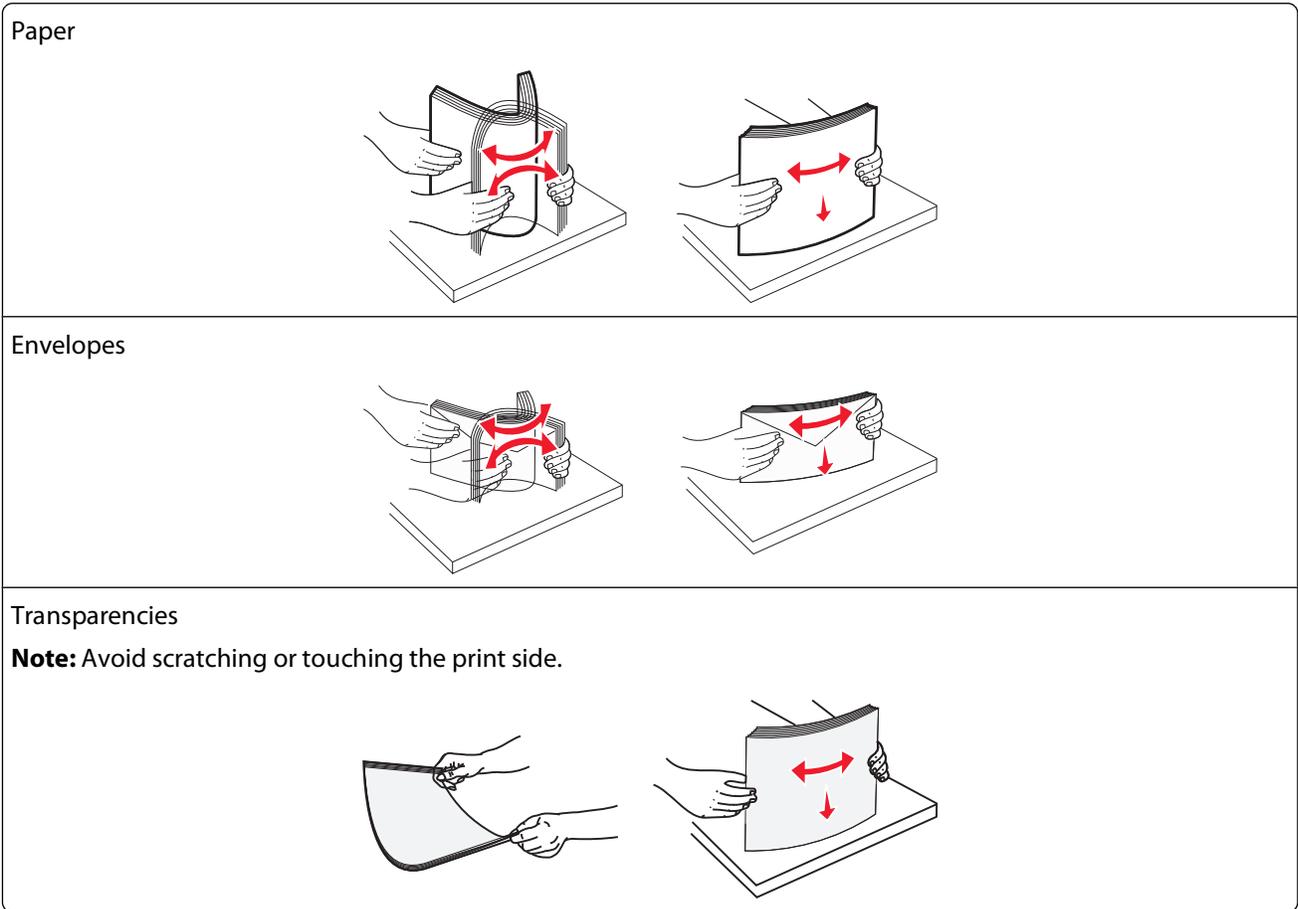
- 1 Pull down the multipurpose feeder door.



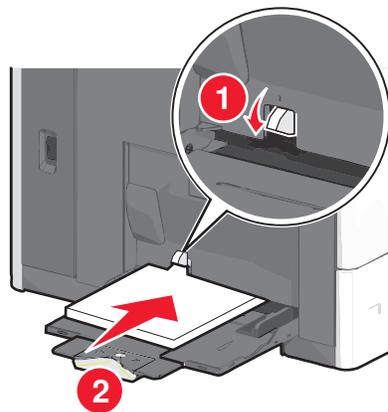
- 2 For paper or specialty media that is longer than letter-size paper, gently pull the extension until it is fully extended.



- 3 Flex the sheets of paper or specialty media back and forth to loosen them. Do not fold or crease them. Straighten the edges on a level surface.



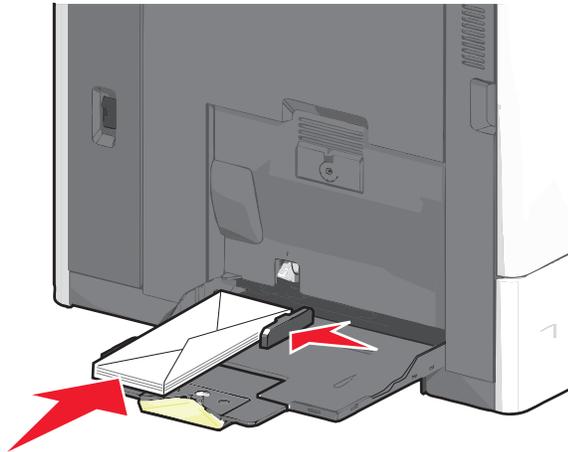
- 4 Push the paper pick tab, and then load the paper or specialty media. Slide the stack gently into the multipurpose feeder until it comes to a stop, and then release the paper pick tab.



**Warning—Potential Damage:** Pulling the paper out, without pushing the paper pick tab first, may cause jams or the paper pick tab to break.

- Load paper and transparencies with the recommended print side facedown and the short edge entering the printer first.
- For duplex letterhead printing, place the letterhead faceup and the header entering the printer last.

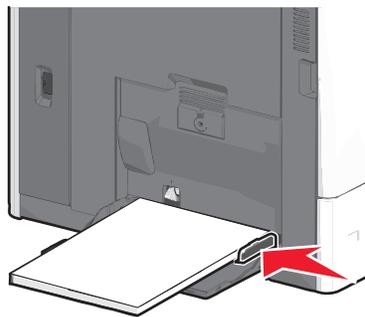
- Load envelopes with the flap side up and to the right.



**Warning—Potential Damage:** Never use envelopes with stamps, clasps, snaps, windows, coated linings, or self-stick adhesives. These envelopes may severely damage the printer.

**Notes:**

- Do not exceed the maximum stack height by forcing paper or transparencies under the stack height limiter.
  - Load only one size and type of paper at a time.
- 5** Adjust the width guide to lightly touch the edge of the stack. Make sure the paper or specialty media fits loosely in the multipurpose feeder, lies flat, and is not bent or wrinkled.



- 6** From the printer control panel, set the Paper Size and Paper Type for the multipurpose feeder (MP Feeder Size and MP Feeder Type) based on the paper or specialty media loaded.

## Linking and unlinking trays

### Linking trays

Tray linking is useful for large print jobs or for printing multiple copies. When one linked tray is empty, paper feeds from the next linked tray. When the Paper Size and Paper Type settings are the same for any trays, the trays are automatically linked. The Paper Size setting is automatically sensed according to the position of the paper guides in each tray except Tray 1 and the multipurpose feeder. The Paper Size setting for the multipurpose feeder must be set manually from the Paper Size menu. The Paper Type setting must be set for all trays from the Paper Type menu. The Paper Type menu and the Paper Size menu are both available from the Paper Size/Type menu.

## Unlinking trays

**Note:** Trays that do not have the same settings as any other tray are not linked.

Change one of the following tray settings:

- Paper Type  
Paper Type names describe the paper characteristics. If the name that best describes your paper is used by linked trays, assign a different Paper Type name to the tray, such as Custom Type [x], or define your own custom name.
- Paper Size  
Load a different paper size to automatically change the Paper Size setting for a tray. Paper Size settings for the multipurpose feeder are not automatic; they must be set manually from the Paper Size menu.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not assign a Paper Type name that does not accurately describe the type of paper loaded in a tray. The temperature of the fuser varies according to the specified Paper Type. Prints may not be properly processed if an inaccurate Paper Type is selected.

## Linking exit bins

Link exit bins to create a single output source. The printer automatically uses the next available bin as the output source.

The standard exit bin holds up to 550 sheets of 20-lb paper. If you need additional output capacity, you can purchase other optional exit bins.

**Note:** Not all exit bins support every paper size and type.

1 From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Paper Menu** > **Bin Setup**

2 Touch the bin or bins you want to link, and then touch **Configure Bins** > **Link**.

## Creating a custom name for a paper type

If the printer is on a network, you can use the Embedded Web Server to define a name other than Custom Type [x] for each of the custom paper types loaded into the printer.

1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

**Note:** If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

2 Click **Settings** > **Paper Menu** > **Custom Name** > type a name > **Submit**.

**Note:** This custom name will replace the Custom Type [x] name under the Custom Types and Paper Size and Type menus.

3 Click **Custom Types** > select a paper type > **Submit**.

## Assigning a custom paper type name

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:  
 > **Paper Menu** > **Paper Size/Type**
- 2 Select the tray number or MP Feeder Type.
- 3 Touch the left or right arrow until **Custom Type [x]** or another custom name appears.
- 4 Touch .

# Paper and specialty media guide

## Paper guidelines

### Paper characteristics

The following paper characteristics affect print quality and reliability. Consider these characteristics when evaluating new paper stock.

#### Weight

The printer can automatically feed paper weights from 60 to 220 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16 to 58 lb bond) grain long. Paper lighter than 60 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16 lb) might not be stiff enough to feed properly, causing jams. For best performance, use 75-g/m<sup>2</sup> (20-lb bond) grain long paper. For paper smaller than 182 x 257 mm (7 x 10 in.), we recommend 90 g/m<sup>2</sup> (24 lb) or heavier paper.

**Note:** Duplex is supported only for 60-g/m<sup>2</sup>–120-g/m<sup>2</sup> (16-lb–32-lb bond) paper.

#### Curl

Curl is the tendency for paper to curl at its edges. Excessive curl can cause paper feeding problems. Curl can occur after the paper passes through the printer, where it is exposed to high temperatures. Storing paper unwrapped in hot, humid, cold, or dry conditions, even in the trays, can contribute to paper curling prior to printing and can cause feeding problems.

#### Smoothness

Paper smoothness directly affects print quality. If paper is too rough, toner cannot fuse to it properly. If paper is too smooth, it can cause paper feeding or print quality issues. Always use paper between 100 and 300 Sheffield points; however, smoothness between 150 and 200 Sheffield points produces the best print quality.

#### Moisture content

The amount of moisture in paper affects both print quality and the ability of the printer to feed the paper correctly. Leave paper in its original wrapper until it is time to use it. This limits the exposure of paper to moisture changes that can degrade its performance.

Condition paper before printing by storing it in its original wrapper in the same environment as the printer for 24 to 48 hours before printing. Extend the time several days if the storage or transportation environment is very different from the printer environment. Thick paper may also require a longer conditioning period.

#### Grain direction

Grain refers to the alignment of the paper fibers in a sheet of paper. Grain is either *grain long*, running the length of the paper, or *grain short*, running the width of the paper.

For 60- to 135-g/m<sup>2</sup> (16- to 36-lb bond) paper, grain long paper is recommended. For papers heavier than 135 g/m<sup>2</sup>, grain short is recommended.

## Fiber content

Most high-quality xerographic paper is made from 100% chemically treated pulped wood. This content provides the paper with a high degree of stability resulting in fewer paper feeding problems and better print quality. Paper containing fibers such as cotton can negatively affect paper handling.

## Unacceptable paper

The following paper types are not recommended for use with the printer:

- Chemically treated papers used to make copies without carbon paper, also known as carbonless papers, carbonless copy paper (CCP), or no carbon required (NCR) paper
- Preprinted papers with chemicals that may contaminate the printer
- Preprinted papers that can be affected by the temperature in the printer fuser
- Preprinted papers that require a registration (the precise print location on the page) greater than  $\pm 2.3$  mm ( $\pm 0.9$  in.), such as optical character recognition (OCR) forms

In some cases, registration can be adjusted with a software application to successfully print on these forms.

- Coated papers (erasable bond), synthetic papers, thermal papers
- Rough-edged, rough or heavily textured surface papers, or curled papers
- Recycled papers that fail EN12281:2002 (European)
- Paper weighing less than  $60 \text{ g/m}^2$  (16 lb)
- Multiple-part forms or documents

## Selecting paper

Using appropriate paper prevents jams and helps ensure trouble-free printing.

To help avoid jams and poor print quality:

- *Always* use new, undamaged paper.
- Before loading paper, know the recommended print side of the paper. This information is usually indicated on the paper package.
- *Do not* use paper that has been cut or trimmed by hand.
- *Do not* mix paper sizes, types, or weights in the same source; mixing results in jams.
- *Do not* use coated papers unless they are specifically designed for electrophotographic printing.

## Selecting preprinted forms and letterhead

Use these guidelines when selecting preprinted forms and letterhead:

- Use grain long for  $60$  to  $90 \text{ g/m}^2$  (16 to 24 lb) weight paper.
- Use only forms and letterhead printed using an offset lithographic or engraved printing process.
- Avoid papers with rough or heavily textured surfaces.

Use papers printed with heat-resistant inks designed for use in xerographic copiers. The ink must be able to withstand temperatures up to  $190^\circ\text{C}$  ( $374^\circ\text{F}$ ) without melting or releasing hazardous emissions. Use inks that are not affected by the resin in toner. Inks that are oxidation-set or oil-based generally meet these requirements; latex inks might not. When in doubt, contact the paper supplier.

Preprinted papers such as letterhead must be able to withstand temperatures up to 190°C (374°F) without melting or releasing hazardous emissions.

## Using recycled paper and other office papers

As an environmentally conscious company, Lexmark supports the use of recycled office paper produced specifically for use in laser (electrophotographic) printers. In 1998, Lexmark presented to the US government a study demonstrating that recycled paper produced by major mills in the US fed as well as non-recycled paper. However, no blanket statement can be made that *all* recycled paper will feed well.

Lexmark consistently tests its printers with recycled paper (20–100% post-consumer waste) and a variety of test paper from around the world, using chamber tests for different temperature and humidity conditions. Lexmark has found no reason to discourage the use of today's recycled office papers, but generally the following property guidelines apply to recycled paper.

- Low moisture content (4–5%)
- Suitable smoothness (100–200 Sheffield units, or 140–350 Bendtsen units, European)

**Note:** Some much smoother papers (such as premium 24 lb laser papers, 50–90 Sheffield units) and much rougher papers (such as premium cotton papers, 200–300 Sheffield units) have been engineered to work very well in laser printers, despite surface texture. Before using these types of paper, consult your paper supplier.

- Suitable sheet-to-sheet coefficient of friction (0.4–0.6)
- Sufficient bending resistance in the direction of feed

Recycled paper, paper of lower weight (<60 g/m<sup>2</sup> [16 lb bond]) and/or lower caliper (<3.8 mils [0.1 mm]), and paper that is cut grain-short for portrait (or short-edge) fed printers may have lower bending resistance than is required for reliable paper feeding. Before using these types of paper for laser (electrophotographic) printing, consult your paper supplier. Remember that these are general guidelines only and that paper meeting these guidelines may still cause paper feeding problems in any laser printer (for example, if the paper curls excessively under normal printing conditions).

## Storing paper

Use these paper storage guidelines to help avoid jams and uneven print quality:

- For best results, store paper where the temperature is 21°C (70°F) and the relative humidity is 40%. Most label manufacturers recommend printing in a temperature range of 18 to 24°C (65 to 75°F) with relative humidity between 40 and 60%.
- Store paper in cartons when possible, on a pallet or shelf, rather than on the floor.
- Store individual packages on a flat surface.
- Do not store anything on top of individual paper packages.

# Supported paper sizes, types, and weights

The following tables provide information on standard and optional paper input sources and the types of paper they support.

**Note:** To use a paper size that is unlisted, configure a Universal Paper Size.

For more information, see the *Card Stock & Label Guide* available on the Lexmark Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

## Supported paper sizes

Measurements apply to simplex (one-sided) printing only. For duplex (two-sided) printing, the minimum size is 139.7 x 210 mm (5.50 x 8.27 in.).

Paper size	Dimensions	Standard 550-sheet tray (Tray 1)	Optional 550-sheet tray	Optional 2,000-sheet tray	Multipurpose feeder	Duplexer
<b>A4</b>	210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.7 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>A5</b>	148 x 210 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in.)	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
<b>A6</b>	105 x 148 mm (4.13 x 5.83 in.)	X	X	X	✓	X
<b>JIS B5</b>	182 x 257 mm (7.17 x 10.1 in.)	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
<b>Letter</b>	215.9 x 279.4 mm (8.5 x 11 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Legal</b>	215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Executive</b>	184.2 x 266.7 mm (7.25 x 10.5 in.)	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
<b>Oficio (México)</b>	215.9 x 340.4 mm (8.5 x 13.4 in.)	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
<b>Folio</b>	215.9 x 330.2 mm (8.5 x 13 in.)	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
<b>Statement</b>	139.7 x 215.9 mm (5.5 x 8.5 in.)	✓	✓	X	✓	✓

<sup>1</sup> Supported by C792 models only.

<sup>2</sup> This formats the envelope size setting for 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.) unless the size is specified by the software application.

Paper size	Dimensions	Standard 550-sheet tray (Tray 1)	Optional 550-sheet tray	Optional 2,000-sheet tray	Multipurpose feeder	Duplexer
<b>Universal</b> <b>Note:</b> Turn size sensing off to support universal sizes that are close to standard media sizes.	148 x 210 mm to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (5.83 x 8.27 in. to 8.5 x 14 in.)	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
	76.2 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in.) to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.)	X	X	X	✓	X
	76.2 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in.) to 215.9 x 914.4 mm (8.5 x 36 in.) <sup>1</sup>	X	X	X	✓	X
	76.2 x 127 mm (3 x 5 in.) to 215.9 x 1219.2 mm (8.5 x 48 in.) <sup>1</sup>	X	X	X	✓	X
<b>7 3/4 Envelope (Monarch)</b>	98.4 x 190.5 mm (3.875 x 7.5 in.)	X	X	X	✓	X
<b>9 Envelope</b>	98.4 x 226.1 mm (3.875 x 8.9 in.)	X	X	X	✓	X
<b>Com 10 Envelope</b>	104.8 x 241.3 mm (4.12 x 9.5 in.)	X	X	X	✓	X
<b>DL Envelope</b>	110 x 220 mm (4.33 x 8.66 in.)	X	X	X	✓	X
<b>C5 Envelope</b>	162 x 229 mm (6.38 x 9.01 in.)	X	X	X	✓	X
<b>B5 Envelope</b>	176 x 250 mm (6.93 x 9.84 in.)	X	X	X	✓	X
<b>Other Envelope<sup>2</sup></b>	85.7 x 165 mm to 215.9 x 355.6 mm (3.375 x 6.50 in. to 8.5 x 14 in.)	X	X	X	✓	X

<sup>1</sup> Supported by C792 models only.

<sup>2</sup> This formats the envelope size setting for 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.) unless the size is specified by the software application.

## Supported paper types and weights

The printer supports 60–220 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16–58 lb) paper weights for one-sided printing. Two-sided printing is supported on 60–120 g/m<sup>2</sup> (16–32 lb) paper weights.

**Note:** Labels, transparencies, envelopes, and card stock always print at reduced speed.

Paper type	Standard 550-sheet tray (Tray 1)	Optional 550-sheet tray	Optional 2,000-sheet tray	Multipurpose feeder	Duplex unit
<b>Paper</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Plain</li> <li>• Bond</li> <li>• Glossy</li> <li>• Colored</li> <li>• Custom Type [x]</li> <li>• Letterhead</li> <li>• Light</li> <li>• Heavy</li> <li>• Preprinted</li> <li>• Rough/Cotton</li> <li>• Recycled</li> </ul>	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Card stock</b>	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
<b>Transparencies</b> <sup>1,2</sup>	✓	✓	X	✓	X
<b>Labels</b> <sup>3</sup> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Paper</li> <li>• Vinyl</li> </ul>	✓	✓	X	✓	✓
<b>Envelopes</b> <sup>4</sup>	X	X	X	✓	X

<sup>1</sup> This media is not supported by the duplex unit.

<sup>2</sup> Do not use inkjet or 3M CG3710 transparencies.

<sup>3</sup> Paper labels are supported. Other media such as vinyl may show print quality defects in some environments, and prolonged vinyl label usage may reduce fuser life. For more information, see the *Card Stock & Label Guide* available on the Lexmark Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

<sup>4</sup> Use envelopes that lie flat when individually placed facedown on a table.

# Printing

This chapter covers printing, printer reports, and job cancelation. The selection and handling of paper and specialty media can affect how reliably documents print. For more information, see “Avoiding jams” on page 167 and “Storing paper” on page 75.

## Printing a document

### Printing a document

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, set the Paper Type and Paper Size to match the loaded paper.
- 2 Send the print job:

#### For Windows users

- a With a document open, click **File > Print**.
- b Click **Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup**.
- c Adjust settings as necessary.
- d Click **OK > Print**.

#### For Macintosh users

- a Customize the settings as needed in the Page Setup dialog:
  - 1 With a document open, choose **File > Page Setup**.
  - 2 Choose a paper size or create a custom size to match the loaded paper.
  - 3 Click **OK**.
- b Customize the settings as needed in the Print dialog:
  - 1 With a document open, choose **File > Print**.  
If necessary, click the disclosure triangle to see more options.
  - 2 From the Print dialog and pop-up menus, adjust the settings as needed.  
**Note:** To print on a specific paper type, adjust the paper type setting to match the loaded paper, or select the appropriate tray or feeder.
  - 3 Click **Print**.

## Printing specialty documents

### Tips on using letterhead

- Use letterhead designed specifically for laser printers.
- Print samples on the letterhead being considered for use before buying large quantities.
- Before loading letterhead, flex the sheets to prevent them from sticking together.

- Observe proper page orientation.

Source	Print side	Paper orientation
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Standard 550-sheet tray</li> <li>– Optional 550-sheet tray</li> <li>– Optional 2000-sheet high-capacity feeder</li> </ul>	Preprinted letterhead design is placed faceup.	The top edge of the sheet with the logo is placed at the left side of the tray.
Duplex (two-sided) printing from trays	Preprinted letterhead design is placed facedown.	The top edge of the sheet with the logo is placed at the right side of the tray.
Multipurpose feeder (simplex printing)	Preprinted letterhead design is placed facedown.	The top edge of the sheet with the logo should enter the multipurpose feeder first.
Multipurpose feeder (duplex printing)	Preprinted letterhead design is placed faceup.	The top edge of the sheet with the logo should enter the multipurpose feeder last.
<p><b>Note:</b> Check with the manufacturer or vendor to determine whether the chosen preprinted letterhead is acceptable for laser printers.</p>		

## Tips on using envelopes

Print samples on the envelopes being considered for use before buying large quantities.

- Use envelopes designed specifically for laser printers. Check with the manufacturer or vendor to ensure that the envelopes can withstand temperatures up to 220°C (446°F) without sealing, wrinkling, curling excessively, or releasing hazardous emissions.
- For best performance, use envelopes made from 90-g/m<sup>2</sup> (24-lb bond) paper or 25% cotton. All-cotton envelopes must not exceed 70-g/m<sup>2</sup> (20-lb bond) weight.
- Use only new envelopes from undamaged packages.
- To optimize performance and minimize jams, do not use envelopes that:
  - Have excessive curl or twist.
  - Are stuck together or damaged in any way.
  - Have windows, holes, perforations, cutouts, or embossing.
  - Have metal clasps, string ties, or folding bars.
  - Have an interlocking design.
  - Have postage stamps attached.
  - Have any exposed adhesive when the flap is in the sealed or closed position.
  - Have bent corners.
  - Have rough, cockle, or laid finishes.
- Adjust the width guides to fit the width of the envelopes.

**Note:** A combination of high humidity (over 60%) and high printing temperature may wrinkle or seal envelopes.

## Tips on using labels

Print samples on the labels being considered for use before buying large quantities.

**Note:** Paper labels are supported. Other media such as vinyl may show print quality defects in some environments, and prolonged vinyl label usage may reduce fuser life.

For detailed information on label printing, characteristics, and design, see the *Card Stock & Label Guide* available on the Lexmark Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

When printing on labels:

- Use labels designed specifically for laser printers. Check with the manufacturer or vendor to verify that:
  - The labels can withstand temperatures up to 190°C (374°F) without sealing, excessive curling, wrinkling, or releasing hazardous emissions.
  - Label adhesives, face sheet (printable stock), and topcoats can withstand up to 25 psi (172 kPa) pressure without delaminating, oozing around the edges, or releasing hazardous fumes.
- Do not use labels with slick backing material.
- Use full label sheets. Partial sheets may cause labels to peel off during printing, resulting in a jam. Partial sheets also contaminate the printer and the cartridge with adhesive, and could void the printer and cartridge warranties.
- Do not use labels with exposed adhesive.
- Do not print within 1 mm (0.04 in.) of the edge of the label, of the perforations, or between die-cuts of the label.
- Be sure adhesive backing does not reach to the sheet edge. Zone coating of the adhesive at least 1 mm (0.04 in.) away from edges is recommended. Adhesive material contaminates the printer and could void the warranty.
- If zone coating of the adhesive is not possible, remove a 1.6 mm (0.06 in.) strip on the leading and driver edge, and use a non-oozing adhesive.
- Portrait orientation works best, especially when printing bar codes.

## Tips on using card stock

Card stock is heavy, single-ply specialty media. Many of its variable characteristics, such as moisture content, thickness, and texture, can significantly impact print quality. Print samples on the card stock being considered for use before buying large quantities.

- From the Paper menu, set the Paper Type to Card Stock.
- Select the appropriate Paper Texture setting.
- Be aware that preprinting, perforation, and creasing may significantly affect the print quality and cause jams or other paper handling problems.
- Check with the manufacturer or vendor to ensure the card stock can withstand temperatures up to 220°C (446°F) without releasing hazardous emissions.
- Do not use preprinted card stock manufactured with chemicals that may contaminate the printer. Preprinting introduces semi-liquid and volatile components into the printer.
- Use grain short card stock when possible.

## Tips on using transparencies

- Print samples on the transparencies being considered for use before buying large quantities.
- Feed transparencies from the standard tray or from the multipurpose feeder.
- From the Paper menu, set the Paper Type to Transparency.

- Use transparencies designed specifically for laser printers. Transparencies must be able to withstand temperatures of 230°C (446°F) without melting, discoloring, offsetting, or releasing hazardous emissions.
- To prevent print quality problems, avoid getting fingerprints on the transparencies.
- Before loading transparencies, flex the stack to prevent sheets from sticking together.
- We recommend Lexmark transparencies. For ordering information, see the Lexmark Web site at [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com).

## Printing confidential and other held jobs

### Storing print jobs in the printer

You can set the printer to store print jobs in the printer memory until you start the print job from the printer control panel.

All print jobs that can be initiated by the user at the printer are called *held jobs*.

**Note:** Confidential, Verify, Reserve, and Repeat print jobs may be deleted if the printer requires extra memory to process additional held jobs.

Print job type	Description
Confidential	Confidential lets you hold print jobs in the computer until you enter the PIN from the control panel. <b>Note:</b> The PIN is set from the computer. It must be four digits, using the numbers 0–9.
Verify	Verify lets you print one copy of a print job while the printer holds the remaining copies. It allows you to examine if the first copy is satisfactory. The print job is automatically deleted from the printer memory once all copies are printed.
Reserve	Reserve allows the printer to store print jobs for printing at a later time. The print jobs are held until deleted from the Help Jobs menu.
Repeat	Repeat prints <i>and</i> stores print jobs in the printer memory for reprinting.

### Printing confidential and other held jobs

**Note:** Confidential and Verify print jobs are automatically deleted from memory after printing. Repeat and Reserve jobs are held in the printer until you choose to delete them.

#### For Windows Users

- 1 With a document open, click **File > Print**, and then click **Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup**.
- 2 Click **Other Options > Print and Hold**.
- 3 Select the print job type (Confidential, Repeat, Reserve, or Verify), and then assign a user name. For a confidential print job, also enter a four-digit PIN.
- 4 Click **OK** or **Print**.
- 5 Go to the printer to release the print job.

From the home screen:

- For confidential print jobs, navigate to:  
**Held jobs** > your user name > **Confidential Jobs** > your PIN > your print job name > number of copies > **Print**
- For other print jobs, navigate to:  
**Held jobs** > your user name > your print job name > number of copies > **Print**

## For Macintosh users

- 1 With a document open, choose **File** > **Print**.  
If necessary, click the disclosure triangle to see more options.
- 2 From the print options or Copies & Pages pop-up menu, choose **Job Routing**.
- 3 Select your print job type (Confidential, Repeat, Reserve, or Verify), and then assign a user name. For a confidential print job, also enter a four-digit PIN.
- 4 Click **OK** or **Print**.
- 5 Go to the printer to release the print job.

From the home screen:

- For confidential print jobs, navigate to:  
**Held jobs** > your user name > **Confidential Jobs** > your PIN > your print job name > number of copies > **Print**
- For other print jobs, navigate to:  
**Held jobs** > your user name > your print job name > number of copies > **Print**

## Supported flash drives and file types

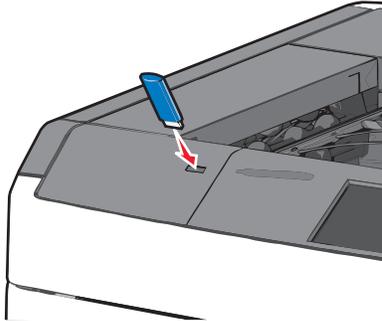
Flash drive	File type
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Lexar JumpDrive 2.0 Pro (256MB, 512MB, or 1GB sizes)</li><li>• SanDisk Cruzer Mini (256MB, 512MB, or 1GB sizes)</li></ul> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Hi-Speed USB flash drives must support the Full-Speed standard. Devices supporting only USB low-speed capabilities are not supported.</li><li>• USB flash drives must support the FAT (<i>File Allocation Tables</i>) system. Devices formatted with NTFS (<i>New Technology File System</i>) or any other file system are not supported.</li></ul>	<p>Documents:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• .pdf</li><li>• .pcx</li><li>• .xps</li><li>• .dcm</li></ul> <p>Images:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• .gif</li><li>• .JPEG</li><li>• .jpg</li><li>• .bmp</li><li>• .TIFF</li><li>• .tif</li><li>• .png</li></ul>

# Printing from a flash drive

## Notes:

- Before printing an encrypted PDF file, enter the file password from the printer control panel.
- You cannot print files for which you do not have printing permissions.

1 Insert a flash drive into the USB port.



## Notes:

- If you insert the flash drive when the printer requires attention, such as when a jam has occurred, then the printer ignores the flash drive.
- If you insert the flash drive while the printer is processing other print jobs, then **Busy** appears. After these print jobs are processed, you may need to view the held jobs list to print documents from the flash drive.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not touch the USB cable, any network adapter, any connector, the memory device, or the printer in the areas shown while actively printing, reading, or writing from the memory device. A loss of data can occur.



2 From the printer control panel, touch the document you want to print.

3 Touch the arrows to increase the number of copies to print, and then touch **Print**.

## Notes:

- Do not remove the flash drive from the USB port until the document has finished printing.
- If you leave the flash drive in the printer after leaving the initial USB menu screen, then you can still print files from the flash drive as held jobs.

# Printing information pages

## Printing a font sample list

1 From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Reports** > **Print Fonts**

2 Touch **PCL Fonts** or **PostScript Fonts**.

## Printing a directory list

A directory list shows the resources stored in a flash memory or on the printer hard disk.

From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Reports** > **Print Directory**

## Printing print quality test pages

Print the print quality test pages to isolate print quality problems.

1 Turn the printer off.

2 Hold down  and  while turning the printer on.

3 Release the buttons when the screen with the progress bar appears.

The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears.

4 Touch **Print Quality Pages Menu** > **Print Quality Pages**.

5 Touch **Exit Config Menu** to return to the home screen.

# Canceling a print job

There are several methods for canceling a print job. The following sections explain how to cancel a print job from the printer control panel, or from a computer depending on the operating system.

## Canceling a print job from the printer control panel

1 Touch **Cancel Jobs** on the touch screen, or press  on the keypad.

2 Touch the job you want to cancel, and then touch **Delete Selected Jobs**.

# Canceling a print job from the computer

## For Windows users

- 1 Open the printers folder:
  - a Click , or click **Start** and then click **Run**.
  - b In the Start Search or Run box, type `control printers`.
  - c Press **Enter**, or click **OK**.
- 2 Double-click the printer icon.
- 3 Select the print job you want to cancel.
- 4 From the keyboard, press **Delete**.

## For Macintosh users

In Mac OS X version 10.5 or later:

- 1 From the Apple menu, choose **System Preferences > Print & Fax > Open Print Queue**.
- 2 From the printer window, select the print job you want to cancel.
- 3 From the icon bar at the top of the window, click the **Delete** icon.

In Mac OS X version 10.4 or earlier:

- 1 From the Finder, navigate to:  
**Go > Applications**
- 2 Double-click **Utilities > Print Center** or **Printer Setup Utility**.
- 3 Double-click the printer icon.
- 4 From the printer window, select the print job you want to cancel.
- 5 From the icon bar at the top of the window, click the **Delete** icon.

# Printing in black and white

From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Settings > Print Settings > Quality Menu > Print Mode > Black Only**

# Adjusting toner darkness

- 1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.  
If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:
  - View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
  - Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
- 2 Click **Settings > Print Settings > Quality Menu > Toner Darkness**.

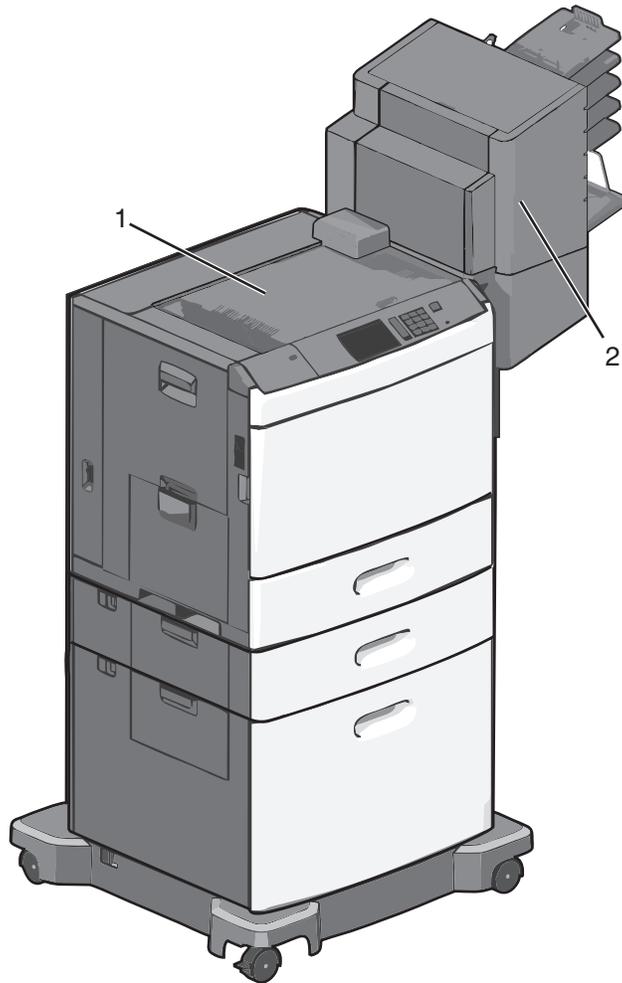
3 Adjust the toner darkness setting.

4 Click **Submit**.

## Supported finishing features

The printer supports the following finishing features:

- Stacker
- StapleSmart finisher
- Two-, Three-, or Four-hole punch
- 5-Bin mailbox



1	Standard bin
2	Finisher bin

### Standard bin

- The paper capacity is 500 sheets.
- Finishing options are not supported in this bin.

- Envelopes are routed here.

## Finisher bin

- The paper capacity is 500 sheets.
- Envelopes, A5, A6 and Statement paper are not supported in this bin.

## Finishing features

Size	Two-hole punch	Three- or four-hole punch	5-bin Mailbox	StapleSmart Finisher
<b>A4</b>	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>A5</b>	X	X	✓	X
<b>Executive</b>	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Folio</b>	✓	X	✓	✓
<b>JIS B5</b>	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Legal</b>	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Letter</b>	✓	✓	✓	✓
<b>Statement</b>	X	X	✓	✓
<b>Universal</b>	X	X	✓	✓
<b>Envelopes (any size)</b>	X	X	✓	X
<b>Oficio</b>	✓	✓	✓	✓

# Understanding printer menus

## Menu list

A number of menus are available to make it easy for you to change printer settings. This diagram shows the items available under each menu.

### Supplies

- Cyan Cartridge
- Magenta Cartridge
- Yellow Cartridge
- Black Cartridge
- Waste Toner Bottle
- Fuser
- Transfer Module
- Staples
- Hole Punch Box

### Paper Menu

- Default Source
- Paper Size/Type
- Configure MP
- Substitute Size
- Paper Texture
- Paper Weight
- Paper Loading
- Custom Types
- Custom Names
- Custom Bin Names
- Universal Setup
- Bin Setup

### Reports

- Menu Settings Page
- Device Statistics
- Network Setup Page
- Network [x] Setup Page
- Profiles List
- Print Fonts
- Print Directory
- Print Demo
- Asset Report

### Settings

- General Settings
- Flash Drive Menu
- Print Settings
- Setup Menu
- Finishing Menu
- Quality Menu
- Job Accounting Menu
- Utilities Menu
- XPS Menu
- PDF Menu
- PostScript Menu
- PCL Emul Menu
- HTML Menu
- Image Menu

### Security

- Miscellaneous Security Settings
- Confidential Print
- Disk Wiping
- Security Audit Log
- Set Date and Time

### Network/Ports

- Active NIC
- Standard Network\*
- Standard USB
- Parallel [x]
- Serial [x]
- SMTP Setup

### Help

- Print All Guides
- Color Quality
- Print Quality
- Printing Guide
- Media Guide
- Print Defects Guide
- Menu Map
- Information Guide
- Connection Guide
- Moving Guide
- Supplies Guide

\* Depending on the printer setup, this menu item appears as Standard Network, Wireless Network, or Network [x].

# Supplies menu

Menu item	Description
<p><b>Cyan Cartridge</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Nearly Low</li> <li>Low</li> <li>Very Low</li> <li>Critically Low</li> <li>Invalid</li> <li>Missing or Defective</li> <li>OK</li> <li>Unsupported</li> </ul>	<p>Shows the status of the cyan print cartridge</p>
<p><b>Magenta Cartridge</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Nearly Low</li> <li>Low</li> <li>Very Low</li> <li>Critically Low</li> <li>Invalid</li> <li>Missing or Defective</li> <li>OK</li> <li>Unsupported</li> </ul>	<p>Shows the status of the magenta print cartridge</p>
<p><b>Yellow Cartridge</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Nearly Low</li> <li>Low</li> <li>Very Low</li> <li>Critically Low</li> <li>Invalid</li> <li>Missing or Defective</li> <li>OK</li> <li>Unsupported</li> </ul>	<p>Shows the status of the yellow print cartridge</p>
<p><b>Black Cartridge</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Nearly Low</li> <li>Low</li> <li>Very Low</li> <li>Critically Low</li> <li>Invalid</li> <li>Missing or Defective</li> <li>OK</li> <li>Unsupported</li> </ul>	<p>Shows the status of the black print cartridge</p>
<p><b>Waste Toner Bottle</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Near Full</li> <li>Replace</li> <li>Missing</li> <li>OK</li> </ul>	<p>Shows the status of the waste toner bottle</p>

Menu item	Description
<b>Fuser</b> Early Warning Low Replace Missing OK	Shows the status of the fuser
<b>Transfer module</b> Early Warning Low Replace Missing OK	Shows the status of the transfer module
<b>Staple Cartridge</b> Early Warning Low Replace Missing OK	Shows the status of the staple cartridge
<b>Hole Punch Box</b> Near Full Replace Missing OK	Shows the status of the hole punch box

## Paper menu

### Default Source menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Default Source</b> Tray [x] MP Feeder Manual Paper Manual Envelope	Sets a default paper source for all print jobs  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tray 1 (standard tray) is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• From the Paper menu, Configure MP feeder must be set to Cassette for MP feeder to appear as a menu setting.</li> <li>• If the same size and type of paper are in two trays and the Paper Size and Paper Type settings match, then the trays are automatically linked. When one tray is empty, the print job continues using the linked tray.</li> </ul>

## Paper Size/Type menu

Menu item	Description
<p><b>Tray [x] Size</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Letter</li> <li>Legal</li> <li>Executive</li> <li>Oficio (México)</li> <li>Folio</li> <li>Statement</li> <li>Universal</li> <li>A4</li> <li>A5</li> <li>JIS B5</li> </ul>	<p>Specifies the paper size loaded in each tray</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.</li> <li>• For trays with automatic size sensing, only the size detected by the hardware appears.</li> <li>• If the same size and type of paper are in two trays and the Paper Size and Paper Type settings match, then the trays are automatically linked. When one tray is empty, the print job uses the linked tray.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Tray [x] Type</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Plain Paper</li> <li>Card Stock</li> <li>Transparency</li> <li>Recycled</li> <li>Glossy</li> <li>Heavy Glossy</li> <li>Labels</li> <li>Vinyl Labels</li> <li>Bond</li> <li>Letterhead</li> <li>Preprinted</li> <li>Colored Paper</li> <li>Light Paper</li> <li>Heavy Paper</li> <li>Rough/Cotton Paper</li> <li>Custom Type [x]</li> </ul>	<p>Specifies the type of paper loaded in each tray</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Plain Paper is the factory default setting for Tray 1. Custom Type [x] is the factory default setting for all other trays.</li> <li>• If available, a user-defined name will appear instead of Custom Type [x].</li> <li>• Use this menu item to configure automatic tray linking.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Note:</b> Only installed trays are listed in this menu.</p>	

Menu item	Description
<p><b>MP Feeder Size</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Letter</li> <li>Legal</li> <li>Executive</li> <li>Oficio (México)</li> <li>Folio</li> <li>Statement</li> <li>Universal</li> <li>7 3/4 Envelope</li> <li>9 Envelope</li> <li>10 Envelope</li> <li>DL Envelope</li> <li>C5 Envelope</li> <li>B5 Envelope</li> <li>Other Envelope</li> <li>A4</li> <li>A5</li> <li>A6</li> <li>JIS B5</li> </ul>	<p>Specifies the paper size loaded in the multipurpose feeder</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.</li> <li>• From the Paper menu, Configure MP Feeder must be set to Cassette for MP Feeder to appear as a menu item.</li> </ul>
<p><b>MP Feeder Type</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Custom Type [x]</li> <li>Plain Paper</li> <li>Card Stock</li> <li>Transparency</li> <li>Recycled</li> <li>Glossy</li> <li>Heavy Glossy</li> <li>Labels</li> <li>Vinyl Labels</li> <li>Bond</li> <li>Envelope</li> <li>Rough Envelope</li> <li>Letterhead</li> <li>Preprinted</li> <li>Colored Paper</li> <li>Light Paper</li> <li>Heavy Paper</li> <li>Rough/Cotton Paper</li> </ul>	<p>Specifies the type of paper loaded in the multipurpose feeder</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Custom Type [x] is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• From the Paper menu, Configure MP Feeder must be set to Cassette for MP Feeder to appear as a menu item.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Note:</b> Only installed trays are listed in this menu.</p>	

Menu item	Description
<p><b>Manual Paper Size</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Letter</li> <li>Legal</li> <li>Executive</li> <li>Oficio (México)</li> <li>Folio</li> <li>Statement</li> <li>Universal</li> <li>A4</li> <li>A5</li> <li>A6</li> <li>JIS B5</li> </ul>	<p>Specifies the size of the paper being manually loaded</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Letter is the US factory default setting. A4 is the international factory default setting.</p>
<p><b>Manual Paper Type</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Plain Paper</li> <li>Card Stock</li> <li>Transparency</li> <li>Recycled</li> <li>Glossy</li> <li>Heavy Glossy</li> <li>Labels</li> <li>Vinyl Labels</li> <li>Bond</li> <li>Letterhead</li> <li>Preprinted</li> <li>Colored Paper</li> <li>Light Paper</li> <li>Heavy Paper</li> <li>Rough/Cotton Paper</li> <li>Custom Type [x]</li> </ul>	<p>Specifies the type of paper being manually loaded</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Plain Paper is the factory default setting.</p>
<p><b>Manual Envelope Size</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>10 Envelope</li> <li>DL Envelope</li> <li>C5 Envelope</li> <li>B5 Envelope</li> <li>Other Envelope</li> <li>7 3/4 Envelope</li> <li>9 Envelope</li> </ul>	<p>Specifies the size of the envelope being manually loaded</p> <p><b>Note:</b> 10 Envelope is the US factory default setting. DL Envelope is the international factory default setting.</p>
<p><b>Manual Envelope Type</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Envelope</li> <li>Rough Envelope</li> <li>Custom Type [x]</li> </ul>	<p>Specifies the type of envelope being manually loaded</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Envelope is the factory default setting.</p>
<p><b>Note:</b> Only installed trays are listed in this menu.</p>	

## Configure MP menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Configure MP</b> Cassette Manual First	Determines when the printer selects paper from the multipurpose feeder <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cassette is the factory default setting. Cassette configures the multipurpose feeder as the automatic paper source.</li> <li>• Manual sets the multipurpose feeder only for manual feed print jobs.</li> <li>• First configures the multipurpose feeder as the primary paper source.</li> </ul>

## Substitute Size menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Substitute Size</b> All Listed Off Statement/A5 Letter/A4	Substitutes a specified paper size if the requested paper size is not available <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All Listed is the factory default setting. All available size substitutions are allowed.</li> <li>• Off indicates no size substitutions are allowed.</li> <li>• Setting a size substitution lets a print job continue without a Change Paper message appearing.</li> </ul>

## Paper Texture menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Plain Texture</b> Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the plain paper loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Card Stock Texture</b> Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the card stock loaded <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Normal is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Settings appear only if card stock is supported.</li> </ul>
<b>Transparency Texture</b> Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the transparencies loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Recycled Texture</b> Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the recycled paper loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
<b>Glossy Texture</b> Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the glossy paper loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Heavy Glossy Texture</b> Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the glossy paper loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Labels Texture</b> Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the labels loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Vinyl Labels Texture</b> Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the vinyl labels loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Bond Texture</b> Rough Smooth Normal	Specifies the relative texture of the bond paper loaded <b>Note:</b> Rough is the factory default setting.
<b>Envelope Texture</b> Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the envelopes loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Rough Envelope Texture</b> Rough	Specifies the relative texture of the envelopes loaded <b>Note:</b> Rough is the factory default setting.
<b>Letterhead Texture</b> Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the letterhead loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Preprinted Texture</b> Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the preprinted paper loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Colored Texture</b> Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the colored paper loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Light Texture</b> Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the paper loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
<b>Heavy Texture</b> Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the paper loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Rough/Cotton Texture</b> Rough	Specifies the relative texture of the cotton paper loaded <b>Note:</b> Rough is the factory default setting.
<b>Custom [x] Texture</b> Normal Rough Smooth	Specifies the relative texture of the custom paper loaded <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Normal is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Settings appear only if the custom type is supported.</li> </ul>

## Paper Weight menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Plain Weight</b> Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the plain paper loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Card Stock Weight</b> Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the card stock loaded <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Normal is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Settings appear only if card stock is supported.</li> </ul>
<b>Transparency Weight</b> Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the transparencies loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Recycled Weight</b> Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the recycled paper loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Glossy Weight</b> Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the glossy paper loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Heavy Glossy Weight</b> Heavy	Specifies the relative weight of the glossy paper loaded <b>Note:</b> Heavy is the factory default setting.
<b>Labels Weight</b> Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the labels loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
<b>Vinyl Labels Weight</b> Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of vinyl labels loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Bond Weight</b> Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the bond paper loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Envelope Weight</b> Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the envelopes loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Rough Envelope Weight</b> Heavy Light Normal	Specifies the relative weight of the envelopes loaded <b>Note:</b> Heavy is the factory default setting.
<b>Letterhead Weight</b> Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the letterhead loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Preprinted Weight</b> Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the preprinted paper loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Colored Weight</b> Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the colored paper loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Light Weight</b> Light	Specifies the relative weight of the paper loaded <b>Note:</b> Light is the factory default setting.
<b>Heavy Weight</b> Heavy	Specifies the relative weight of the paper loaded <b>Note:</b> Heavy is the factory default setting.
<b>Rough/Cotton Weight</b> Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the cotton paper loaded <b>Note:</b> Normal is the factory default setting.
<b>Custom [x] Weight</b> Normal Heavy Light	Specifies the relative weight of the custom paper loaded <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Normal is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Settings appear only if the custom type is supported.</li> </ul>

## Paper Loading menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Card Stock Loading</b> Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Card Stock as the paper type <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Recycled Loading</b> Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Recycled as the paper type <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Glossy Loading</b> Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Glossy as the paper type <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Heavy Glossy Loading</b> Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Heavy Glossy as the paper type <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Labels Loading</b> Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Labels as the paper type <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Vinyl Labels Loading</b> Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Vinyl Labels as the paper type <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Bond Loading</b> Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Bond as the paper type <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Letterhead Loading</b> Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Letterhead as the paper type <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Preprinted Loading</b> Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Preprinted as the paper type <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Colored Loading</b> Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Colored as the paper type <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Light Loading</b> Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Light as the paper type <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Duplex sets the printer default to 2-sided printing for every print job unless 1-sided printing is selected from Print Properties.</li> <li>• If Duplex is selected, then all print jobs are sent through the duplex unit, including 1-sided print jobs.</li> </ul>	

Menu item	Description
<b>Heavy Loading</b> Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Heavy as the paper type <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Rough/Cotton Loading</b> Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Rough or Cotton as the paper type <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Custom [x] Loading</b> Off Duplex	Determines whether 2-sided printing occurs for all print jobs that specify Custom [x] as the paper type <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>Custom [x] Loading is available only if the custom paper type is supported.</li> </ul>
<b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Duplex sets the printer default to 2-sided printing for every print job unless 1-sided printing is selected from Print Properties.</li> <li>If Duplex is selected, then all print jobs are sent through the duplex unit, including 1-sided print jobs.</li> </ul>	

## Custom Types menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Custom Type [x]</b> Paper Card Stock Transparency Glossy Rough/Cotton Labels Vinyl Labels Envelope	Associates a paper or specialty media type with a factory default <b>Custom Type [x]</b> name or a user-defined Custom Name created from the Embedded Web Server or from MarkVision™ Professional <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Paper is the factory default setting.</li> <li>The custom media type must be supported by the selected tray or multipurpose feeder in order to print from that source.</li> </ul>
<b>Recycled</b> Paper Card Stock Transparency Glossy Rough/Cotton Labels Vinyl Labels Envelope	Specifies a paper type when the Recycled setting is selected in other menus <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Paper is the factory default setting.</li> <li>The custom media type must be supported by the selected tray or multipurpose feeder in order to print from that source.</li> </ul>

## Custom Names menu

Menu item	Definition
<b>Custom Name [x]</b> [none]	Specify a custom name for a paper type. This name replaces the <b>Custom Type [x]</b> name in the printer menus.

## Custom Bin Names menu

Menu Item	Description
<b>Standard Bin</b>	Specifies a custom name for the Standard Bin
<b>Bin [x]</b>	Specifies a custom name for Bin [x]

## Universal Setup menu

These menu items are used to specify the height and width of the Universal paper size. The Universal paper size is a user-defined paper size setting. It is listed with the other paper size settings and includes similar options, such as support for duplex printing and printing multiple pages on one sheet.

Menu item	Description
<b>Units of Measure</b> Inches Millimeters	Identifies the unit of measure <b>Note:</b> Inches is the US factory default setting. Millimeters is the international factory default setting.
<b>Portrait Width</b> 3–48 inches 76–1219 mm	Sets the portrait width <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the width exceeds the maximum, then the printer uses the maximum width allowed.</li> <li>• 8.5 inches is the US factory default setting. 216 mm is the international factory default setting.</li> <li>• The width can be increased in 0.01-inch or in 1-mm increments.</li> </ul>
<b>Portrait Height</b> 3–48 inches 76–1219 mm	Sets the portrait height <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the height exceeds the maximum, then the printer uses the maximum height allowed.</li> <li>• 14 inches is the US factory default setting. 356 mm is the international factory default setting.</li> <li>• The height can be increased in 0.01-inch or in 1-mm increments.</li> </ul>
<b>Feed Direction</b> Short Edge Long Edge	Specifies the feed direction <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Short Edge is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Long Edge appears only if the longest edge is shorter than the maximum width supported in the tray.</li> </ul>

## Bin Setup menu

Menu Item	Description
<b>Output Bin</b> Standard Bin Bin [x]	Specifies the default output bin <b>Note:</b> Standard Bin is the factory default setting.
<b>Configure Bins</b> Mailbox Link Mail Overflow Link Optional Type Assignment	Specifies configuration options for output bins <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mailbox is the factory default setting. This setting treats each bin as a separate mailbox.</li> <li>• Link configures all available bins as one large output bin.</li> <li>• Link Optional links together all available output bins except the standard bin and only appears when at least two optional bins are installed.</li> <li>• Type Assignment assigns each paper type to an output bin or linked bin set.</li> <li>• Bins assigned the same name are automatically linked unless Link Optional is selected.</li> </ul>
<b>Overflow Bin</b> Standard Bin Bin [x]	Specifies an alternate output bin when a designated bin is full <b>Note:</b> Standard Bin is the factory default setting.
<b>Assign Type/Bin</b> Plain Paper Bin Card Stock Bin Transparency Bin Recycled Bin Glossy Bin Heavy Glossy Bin Labels Bin Vinyl Labels Bin Bond Bin Envelope Bin Rough Envelope Bin Letterhead Bin Preprinted Bin Colored Bin Light Paper Bin Heavy Paper Bin Rough/Cotton Bin Custom [x] Bin	Selects an output bin for each supported paper type Available selections for each type are: Disabled Standard Bin Bin [x] <b>Note:</b> Disabled is the factory default setting.

# Reports menu

## Reports menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Menu Settings Page</b>	Prints a report containing information about the paper loaded into trays, installed memory, total page count, alarms, timeouts, printer control panel language, TCP/IP address, status of supplies, status of the network connection, and other information
<b>Device Statistics</b>	Prints a report containing printer statistics such as supply information and details about printed pages
<b>Network Setup Page</b>	Prints a report containing information about the network printer settings, such as the TCP/IP address information <b>Note:</b> This menu item appears only in network printers or in printers connected to print servers.
<b>Network [x] Setup Page</b>	Prints a report containing information about the network printer settings, such as the TCP/IP address information <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• This selection is available when more than one network option is installed.</li><li>• This menu item appears only in network printers or in printers connected to print servers.</li></ul>
<b>Profiles List</b>	Prints a list of profiles stored in the printer
<b>Print Fonts</b> PCL Fonts PostScript Fonts	Prints a report of all the fonts available for the printer language currently set in the printer <b>Note:</b> A separate list is available for PCL and PostScript emulations.
<b>Print Directory</b>	Prints a list of all the resources stored on an optional flash memory card or printer hard disk <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Job Buffer Size must be set to 100%.</li><li>• Make sure the optional flash memory or printer hard disk is installed correctly and working properly.</li></ul>
<b>Asset Report</b>	Prints a report containing printer asset information, such as serial number and model name <b>Note:</b> The report contains text and UPC barcodes that can be scanned into an asset database.

# Network/Ports menu

## Active NIC menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Active NIC</b> Auto [list of available network cards]	<b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Auto is the factory default setting.</li><li>• This menu item appears only if an optional network card is installed.</li></ul>

## Standard Network or Network [x] menus

**Note:** Only active ports appear in this menu; all inactive ports are omitted.

Menu item	Description
<b>PCL SmartSwitch</b> On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• On is the factory default setting.</li><li>• When Off is used, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PostScript emulation if PS SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PS SmartSwitch is set to Off.</li></ul>
<b>PS SmartSwitch</b> On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job requires it, regardless of the default printer language <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• On is the factory default setting.</li><li>• When Off is used, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PCL emulation if PCL SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off.</li></ul>
<b>NPA Mode</b> Auto Off	Sets the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Auto is the factory default setting.</li><li>• Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li></ul>

Menu item	Description
<b>Network Buffer</b> Auto 3KB to [maximum size allowed]	Sets the size of the network input buffer  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The value can be changed in 1-KB increments.</li> <li>• The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off.</li> <li>• To increase the maximum size range for the Network Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the parallel, serial, and USB buffers.</li> <li>• Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>
<b>Job Buffering</b> Off On Auto	Temporarily stores print jobs on the printer hard disk before printing. This menu only appears if a formatted disk is installed.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• On buffers print jobs on the printer hard disk.</li> <li>• Auto buffers print jobs only if the printer is busy processing data from another input port.</li> <li>• Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>
<b>Mac Binary PS</b> Auto On Off	Sets the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Off filters print jobs using the standard protocol.</li> <li>• On processes raw binary PostScript print jobs.</li> </ul>
<b>Standard Network Setup</b> Reports Network Card TCP/IP IPv6 Wireless AppleTalk	Displays and sets the printer network settings.  <b>Note:</b> The Wireless menu appears only when the printer is connected to a wireless network.
<b>Network [x] Setup</b> Reports Network Card TCP/IP IPv6 Wireless AppleTalk	

## Network Reports menu

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

**Network/Ports > Standard Network or Network [x] > Standard Network Setup or Network [x] Setup > Reports or Network Reports**

Menu item	Description
<b>Print Setup Page</b>	Prints a report containing information about the network printer settings, such as the TCP/IP address

## Network Card menu

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

**Network/Ports > Standard Network or Network [x] > Standard Network Setup or Network [x] Setup > Network Card**

Menu item	Description
<b>View Card Status</b> Connected Disconnected	Lets you view the connection status of the Network Card
<b>View Card Speed</b>	Lets you view the speed of a currently active network card
<b>View Network Address</b> UAA LAA	Lets you view the network addresses
<b>End-of-Job Timeout</b> 0–225	Sets the amount of time in seconds before a network print job is canceled <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 90 seconds is the factory default setting.</li><li>• 0 disables the timeout.</li><li>• If a value of 1–9 is selected, then the setting is saved as 10.</li></ul>
<b>Banner Page</b> Off On	Allows the printer to print a banner page <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.

## TCP/IP menu

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

**Network/Ports > Standard Network or Network [x] > Standard Network Setup or Network [x] Setup > TCP/IP**

**Note:** This menu is available only in network models or printers attached to print servers.

Menu item	Description
<b>Activate</b> On Off	Activates TCP/IP <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.
<b>Set Hostname</b>	Lets you set the current TCP/IP hostname <b>Note:</b> This can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
<b>IP Address</b>	Lets you view or change the current TCP/IP address <b>Note:</b> Manually setting the IP address sets the Enable DHCP and Enable Auto IP settings to Off. It also sets Enable BOOTP and Enable RARP to Off on systems that support BOOTP and RARP.
<b>Netmask</b>	Lets you view or change the current TCP/IP netmask
<b>Gateway</b>	Lets you view or change the current TCP/IP gateway
<b>Enable DHCP</b> On Off	Specifies the DHCP address and parameter assignment setting <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.
<b>Enable RARP</b> On Off	Specifies the RARP address assignment setting <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.
<b>Enable BOOTP</b> On Off	Specifies the BOOTP address assignment setting <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.
<b>Enable AutoIP</b> Yes No	Specifies the Zero Configuration Networking setting <b>Note:</b> Yes is the factory default setting.
<b>Enable FTP/TFTP</b> Yes No	Enables the built-in FTP server, which allows you to send files to the printer using File Transfer Protocol. <b>Note:</b> Yes is the factory default setting.
<b>Enable HTTP Server</b> Yes No	Enables the built-in web server (Embedded Web Server). When enabled, the printer can be monitored and managed remotely using a web browser. <b>Note:</b> Yes is the factory default setting.
<b>WINS Server Address</b>	Lets you view or change the current WINS server address
<b>Enable DDNS</b> Yes No	Lets you view or change the current DDNS setting <b>Note:</b> Yes is the factory default setting.
<b>Enable mDNS</b> Yes No	Lets you view or change the current mDNS setting <b>Note:</b> Yes is the factory default setting.
<b>DNS Server Address</b>	Lets you view or change the current DNS server address
<b>Enable HTTPS</b> Yes No	Lets you view or change the current HTTPS setting <b>Note:</b> Yes is the factory default setting.

## IPv6 menu

**Note:** This menu is available only in network models or in printers attached to print servers.

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

**Network/Ports > Standard Network or Network [x] > Standard Network Setup or Network [x] Setup > IPv6**

Menu item	Description
<b>Enable IPv6</b> On Off	Enables IPv6 in the printer <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.
<b>Auto Configuration</b> On Off	Specifies whether the network adapter accepts the automatic IPv6 address configuration entries provided by a router <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.
<b>Set Hostname</b>	Lets you set the printer host name
<b>View Address</b>	Shows the printer IPv6 address <b>Note:</b> The IPv6 address can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
<b>View Router Address</b>	Shows the router address <b>Note:</b> The router address can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
<b>Enable DHCPv6</b> On Off	Enables DHCPv6 in the printer <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.

## Wireless menu

Use the following menu items to view or configure the wireless internal print server settings.

**Note:** This menu is available only for models connected to a wireless network.

The Wireless menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

**Network/Ports > Standard Network or Network [x] > Standard Network Setup or Network [x] Setup > Wireless**

Menu item	Description
<b>WPS PBC Mode</b>	Lets you connect the printer to a wireless network by pressing buttons on both the printer and the access point (wireless router) within a given period of time
<b>WPS PIN Mode</b>	Lets you connect the printer to a wireless network by using a PIN on the printer and entering it into the wireless settings of the access point
<b>WPS Auto Detect</b> Disable Enable	Automatically detects the connection method that an access point with WPS uses— WPS Push Button Configuration (PBC) or WPS Personal Identification Number (PIN) <b>Note:</b> Disable is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
<b>Network Mode</b> Ad hoc Infrastructure	Specifies the network mode  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ad hoc is the factory default setting. This configures wireless connection directly between the printer and a computer.</li> <li>• Infrastructure lets the printer access a network using an access point.</li> </ul>
<b>Compatibility</b> 802.11b/g/n 802.11n 802.11b/g	Specifies the wireless standard for the wireless network  <b>Note:</b> The 802.11b/g/n is the factory default setting.
<b>Choose Network</b> [list of available networks]	Lets you select an available network for the printer to use
<b>View Signal Quality</b>	Lets you view the quality of the wireless connection
<b>View Security Mode</b>	Lets you view the encryption method that a wireless network uses

**Note:** *Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS)* is a simple and secure configuration that allows you to establish a wireless network and enable network security without requiring prior knowledge of Wi-Fi technology. It is no longer necessary to configure the network name (SSID) and WEP key or WPA passphrase for network devices.

## AppleTalk menu

This menu is available from the Network/Ports menu:

**Network/Ports > Standard Network** or **Network [x] > Standard Network Setup** or **Network [x] Setup > AppleTalk**

Menu item	Description
<b>Activate</b> Yes No	Activates AppleTalk support  <b>Note:</b> Yes is the factory default setting.
<b>View Name</b>	Shows the assigned AppleTalk name  <b>Note:</b> The name can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
<b>View Address</b>	Shows the assigned AppleTalk address  <b>Note:</b> The address can be changed only from the Embedded Web Server.
<b>Set Zone</b> [default] [list of zones available on the network]	Provides a list of AppleTalk zones available on the network  <b>Note:</b> When "default" is selected, the printer uses the AppleTalk zone that the router identifies as the default zone for the network. If no default zone exists, then the zone marked with an * is the default setting.

## Standard USB menu

Menu item	Description
<b>PCL SmartSwitch</b> On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job received through a USB port requires it, regardless of the default printer language  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PostScript emulation if the PS SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if the PS SmartSwitch is set to Off.</li> </ul>
<b>PS SmartSwitch</b> On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job received through a USB port requires it, regardless of the default printer language  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PCL emulation if the PCL SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if the PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off.</li> </ul>
<b>NPA Mode</b> Auto On Off	Sets the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting. Auto sets the printer to examine data, determine the format, and then process it appropriately.</li> <li>• Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>
<b>USB Buffer</b> Auto 3KB to [maximum size allowed] Disabled	Sets the size of the USB input buffer  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Disabled turns off job buffering. Any jobs already buffered on the printer hard disk are printed before normal processing resumes.</li> <li>• The USB buffer size value can be changed in 1-KB increments.</li> <li>• The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off.</li> <li>• To increase the maximum size range for the USB Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the parallel, serial, and network buffers.</li> <li>• Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
<b>Job Buffering</b> Off On Auto	Temporarily stores print jobs on the printer hard disk before printing <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• On buffers jobs on the printer hard disk.</li> <li>• Auto buffers print jobs only if the printer is busy processing data from another input port.</li> <li>• Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>
<b>Mac Binary PS</b> Auto On Off	Sets the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• On processes raw binary PostScript print jobs.</li> <li>• Off filters print jobs using the standard protocol.</li> </ul>
<b>ENA Address</b> yyy.yyy.yyy.yyy	Sets the network address information for an external print server <b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
<b>ENA Netmask</b> yyy.yyy.yyy.yyy	Sets the netmask information for an external print server <b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
<b>ENA Gateway</b> yyy.yyy.yyy.yyy	Sets the gateway information for an external print server <b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.

## Parallel [x] menu

Menu item	Description
<b>PCL SmartSwitch</b> On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job received through a serial port requires it, regardless of the default printer language <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PostScript emulation if PS SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PS SmartSwitch is set to Off.</li> </ul>
<b>PS SmartSwitch</b> On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job received through a serial port requires it, regardless of the default printer language <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PCL emulation if PCL SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
<b>NPA Mode</b> Auto On Off	Sets the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>
<b>Parallel Buffer</b> Auto 3KB to [maximum size allowed] Disabled	Sets the size of the parallel input buffer  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Disabled turns off job buffering. Any print jobs already buffered on the printer hard disk are printed before normal processing resumes.</li> <li>• The parallel buffer size setting can be changed in 1-KB increments.</li> <li>• The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off.</li> <li>• To increase the maximum size range for the Parallel Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the USB, serial, and network buffers.</li> <li>• Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>
<b>Job Buffering</b> Off On Auto	Temporarily stores print jobs on the printer hard disk before printing  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• On buffers print jobs on the printer hard disk.</li> <li>• Auto buffers print jobs only if the printer is busy processing data from another input port.</li> <li>• Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>
<b>Advanced Status</b> On Off	Enables bidirectional communication through the parallel port  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Off disables parallel port negotiation.</li> </ul>
<b>Protocol</b> Fastbytes Standard	Specifies the parallel port protocol  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fastbytes is the factory default setting. It provides compatibility with most existing parallel ports and is the recommended setting.</li> <li>• Standard tries to resolve parallel port communication problems.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
<b>Honor Init</b> Off On	Determines if the printer honors printer hardware initialization requests from the computer  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The computer requests initialization by activating the Init signal from the parallel port. Many personal computers activate the Init signal each time the computer is turned on.</li> </ul>
<b>Parallel Mode 2</b> On Off	Determines if the parallel port data is sampled on the leading or trailing edge of a strobe  <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.
<b>Mac Binary PS</b> Auto On Off	Sets the printer to process Macintosh binary PostScript print jobs  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Off filters print jobs using the standard protocol.</li> <li>• On processes raw binary PostScript print jobs.</li> </ul>
<b>ENA Address</b> yyy.yyy.yyy.yyy	Sets the network address information for an external print server  <b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
<b>ENA Netmask</b> yyy.yyy.yyy.yyy	Sets the netmask information for an external print server  <b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.
<b>ENA gateway</b> yyy.yyy.yyy.yyy	Sets the gateway information for an external print server  <b>Note:</b> This menu item is available only if the printer is attached to an external print server through the USB port.

## Serial [x] menu

Menu item	Description
<b>PCL SmartSwitch</b> On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PCL emulation when a print job received through a serial port requires it, regardless of the default printer language  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PostScript emulation if PS SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PS SmartSwitch is set to Off.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
<b>PS SmartSwitch</b> On Off	Sets the printer to automatically switch to PS emulation when a print job received through a serial port requires it, regardless of the default printer language <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• When set to Off, the printer does not examine incoming data. The printer uses PCL emulation if PCL SmartSwitch is set to On. It uses the default printer language specified in the Setup menu if PCL SmartSwitch is set to Off.</li> </ul>
<b>NPA Mode</b> Auto On Off	Sets the printer to perform the special processing required for bidirectional communication following the conventions defined by the NPA protocol <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting. Auto sets the printer to examine data, determine the format, and then processes it appropriately.</li> <li>• When set to On, the printer performs NPA processing. If the data is not in NPA format, it is rejected as bad data.</li> <li>• When set to Off, the printer does not perform NPA processing.</li> <li>• Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>
<b>Serial Buffer</b> Auto 3KB to [maximum size allowed] Disabled	Sets the size of the serial input buffer <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Disabled turns off job buffering. Any jobs already buffered on the disk are printed before normal processing is resumed.</li> <li>• The serial buffer size setting can be changed in 1-KB increments.</li> <li>• The maximum size allowed depends on the amount of memory in the printer, the size of the other link buffers, and whether Resource Save is set to On or Off.</li> <li>• To increase the maximum size range for the Serial Buffer, disable or reduce the size of the parallel, serial, and network buffers.</li> <li>• Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>
<b>Job Buffering</b> Off On Auto	Temporarily stores print jobs on the printer hard disk before printing <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting. The printer does not buffer print jobs on the printer hard disk.</li> <li>• On buffers print jobs on the printer hard disk.</li> <li>• Auto buffers print jobs only if the printer is busy processing data from another input port.</li> <li>• Changing this setting from the printer control panel and then exiting the menus causes the printer to restart. The menu selection is then updated.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
<b>Protocol</b> DTR DTR/DSR XON/XOFF XON/XOFF/DTR XONXOFF/DTRDSR	Selects the hardware and software handshaking settings for the serial port <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DTR is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• DTR/DSR is a hardware handshaking setting.</li> <li>• XON/XOFF is a software handshaking setting.</li> <li>• XON/XOFF/DTR and XON/XOFF/DTR/DSR are combined hardware and software handshaking settings.</li> </ul>
<b>Robust XON</b> Off On	Determines whether the printer communicates availability to the computer <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This menu item applies only to the serial port if Serial Protocol is set to XON/XOFF.</li> </ul>
<b>Baud</b> 9600 19200 38400 57600 115200 138200 172800 230400 345600 1200 2400 4800	Specifies the rate at which data can be received through the serial port <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 9600 is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• 138200, 172800, 230400, and 345600 baud rates are only displayed in the Standard Serial menu. These settings do not appear in the Serial Option 1, Serial Option 2, or Serial Option 3 menus.</li> </ul>
<b>Data Bits</b> 8 7	Specifies the number of data bits sent in each transmission frame <b>Note:</b> 8 is the factory default setting.
<b>Parity</b> None Ignore Even Odd	Sets the parity for serial input and output data frames <b>Note:</b> None is the factory default setting.
<b>Honor DSR</b> Off On	Determines whether the printer uses the DSR Signal <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• DSR is a handshaking signal used by most serial cables. The serial port uses DSR to distinguish data sent by the computer from data created by electrical noise in the serial cable. The electrical noise can cause stray characters to print. Set this to On to prevent stray characters from printing.</li> </ul>

## SMTP Setup menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Primary SMTP Gateway</b>	Specifies SMTP server gateway and port information <b>Note:</b> 25 is the default SMTP gateway port.
<b>Primary SMTP Gateway Port</b>	
<b>Secondary SMTP Gateway</b>	
<b>Secondary SMTP Gateway Port</b>	
<b>SMTP Timeout</b> 5–30	Specifies the amount of time in seconds before the server stops trying to send an e-mail <b>Note:</b> 30 seconds is the factory default setting.
<b>Reply Address</b>	Specifies a reply address of up to 128 characters in the e-mail sent by the printer
<b>Use SSL</b> Disabled Negotiate Required	Sets the printer to use SSL for increased security when connecting to the SMTP server <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disabled is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• When the Negotiate setting is used, the SMTP server determines if SSL will be used.</li> </ul>
<b>SMTP Server Authentication</b> No authentication required Login/Plain CRAM-MD5 Digest-MD5 NTLM Kerberos 5	Specifies the type of user authentication required for scan to e-mail privileges <b>Note:</b> “No authentication required” is the factory default setting.
<b>Device-Initiated E-mail</b> None Use Device SMTP Credentials	Specifies what credentials will be used when communicating to the SMTP server. Some SMTP servers require credentials to send an e-mail. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None is the factory default setting for Device and User-Initiated E-mail.</li> <li>• Device Userid and Device Password are used to log in to the SMTP server when Use Device SMTP Credentials is selected.</li> </ul>
<b>User-Initiated E-mail</b> None Use Device SMTP Credentials Use Session User ID & Password Use Session E-mail address & Password Prompt User	
<b>Device Userid</b>	
<b>Device Password</b>	
<b>Kerberos 5 Realm</b>	
<b>NTLM Domain</b>	

# Security menu

## Miscellaneous Security Settings menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Login Restriction</b> Login failures 1–10 Failure time frame 1–60 Lockout time 1–60 Panel Login Timeout 1–900 Remote Login Timeout 1–120	Limits the number and time frames of failed login attempts from the printer control panel before <i>all</i> users are locked out <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• “Login failures” specifies the number of failed login attempts before users are locked out. 3 attempts is the factory default setting.</li><li>• “Failure time frame” specifies the time frame during which failed login attempts can be made before users are locked out. 5 minutes is the factory default setting.</li><li>• “Lockout time” specifies how long users are locked out after exceeding the login failures limit. 5 minutes is the factory default setting.</li><li>• Panel Login Timeout specifies how long the printer remains idle on the home screen before automatically logging the user off. 30 seconds is the factory default setting.</li><li>• Remote Login Timeout specifies how long a remote interface (for example, a Web page) can remain idle before automatically logging the user off. 10 minutes is the factory default setting.</li></ul>

## Confidential Print menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Max Invalid PIN</b> Off 2–10	Limits the number of times an invalid PIN can be entered <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Off is the default setting.</li><li>• This menu item appears only if a printer hard disk is installed.</li><li>• Once a limit is reached, the jobs for that user name and that PIN are deleted.</li></ul>
<b>Job Expiration</b> Off 1 hour 4 hours 24 hours 1 week	Limits the amount of time a confidential job stays in the printer before it is deleted <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Off is the default setting.</li><li>• If the Job Expiration setting is changed while confidential jobs reside on the printer RAM or printer hard disk, the expiration time for those print jobs does not change to the new default value.</li><li>• If the printer is turned off, all confidential jobs held in printer RAM are deleted.</li></ul>

## Disk Wiping menu

Disk Wiping erases *only* print job data on the printer hard disk that *are not* currently in use by the file system. All permanent data on the printer hard disk are preserved, such as downloaded fonts, macros, and held jobs.

**Note:** This menu item appears only if a formatted, non-defective printer hard disk is installed.

Menu item	Description
<b>Wiping Mode</b> Off Auto Manual	<p>Disk Wiping erases <i>only</i> print job data that <i>is not</i> currently in use by the file system from the printer hard disk. All permanent data on the printer hard disk is preserved, such as downloaded fonts, macros, and held jobs.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Due to the large amount of resources required for Automatic Wiping, activating this option may decrease printer performance, especially if the printer requires hard disk space faster than it can be wiped and returned to service.</li> </ul>
<b>Manual Wiping</b> Do not start now Start now	<p>Manual Wiping overwrites all disk space that has been used to hold data from a print job that has been processed (printed). This type of wipe <i>does not</i> erase any information related to an unprocessed print job.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Do not start now” is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• If the Disk Wiping access control is activated, then a user must successfully authenticate and have the required authorization in order to initiate the disk wipe.</li> </ul>
<b>Automatic Method</b> Single pass Multiple pass	<p>Automatic wiping marks all disk space used by a previous print job and does not permit the file system to reuse this space until it has been cleared.</p> <p>Only Automatic wiping enables users to activate disk wiping without having to turn the printer off for an extended amount of time.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Single pass” is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Highly confidential information should be wiped using <i>only</i> the Multiple pass method.</li> </ul>
<b>Manual Method</b> Single pass Multiple pass	<p>Both manual and scheduled wiping allow the file system to reuse marked disk space without having to wipe it first.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Single pass” is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Highly confidential information should be wiped using <i>only</i> the Multiple pass method.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
<b>Scheduled Method</b> Single pass Multiple pass	Both manual and scheduled wiping allow the file system to reuse marked disk space without having to wipe it first.  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Single pass” is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Highly confidential information should be wiped using <i>only</i> the Multiple Pass method .</li> <li>• Scheduled wipes are initiated <i>without</i> displaying a user warning or confirmation message.</li> </ul>

## Security Audit Log menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Export Log</b>	Enables an authorized user to export the audit log  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To export the audit log from the printer control panel, a flash drive must be attached to the printer.</li> <li>• From the Embedded Web Server, the audit log can be downloaded to a computer.</li> </ul>
<b>Delete Log</b> Yes No	Specifies whether audit logs are deleted  <b>Note:</b> “Yes” is the factory default setting.
<b>Configure Log</b> Enable Audit No Yes Enable Remote Syslog No Yes Remote Syslog Facility 0–23 Severity of events to log 0–7	Specifies whether and how audit logs are created  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enable Audit determines if events are recorded in the secure audit log and remote syslog. No is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Enable Remote Syslog determines if logs are sent to a remote server. No is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Remote Syslog Facility determines the value used to send logs to the remote syslog server. 4 is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• With the security audit log activated, the severity value of each event is recorded. 4 is the factory default setting.</li> </ul>

## Set Date and Time menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Current Date and Time</b>	Shows the current date and time settings for the printer
<b>Manually Set Date and Time</b> [input date/time]	<b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Date and Time is set in YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM format.</li> <li>• Manually setting the date and time sets Enable NTP to Off.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
<b>Time Zone</b> [list of time zones]	<b>Note:</b> GMT is the factory default setting.
<b>Automatically observe DST</b> On Off	<b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting. This uses the applicable Daylight Saving Time associated with the Time Zone setting.
<b>Enable NTP</b> On Off	Enables Network Time Protocol, which synchronizes the clocks of devices on a network  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The setting is turned off if you manually set the date and time.</li> </ul>

## Settings menu

### General Settings menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Display Language</b> English Francais Deutsch Italiano Espanol Greek Dansk Norsk Nederlands Svenska Portuguese Suomi Russian Polski Magyar Turkce Cesky Simplified Chinese Traditional Chinese Korean Japanese	Sets the language of the text appearing on the display <b>Note:</b> Some languages may not be available for all printers.

Menu item	Description
<p><b>Eco-Mode</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Off</li> <li>Energy</li> <li>Energy/Paper</li> <li>Paper</li> </ul>	<p>Minimizes the use of energy, paper, or specialty media</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting. Off resets the printer to its factory default settings.</li> <li>• Energy minimizes the power used by the printer. Performance may be affected, but print quality is not.</li> <li>• Energy/Paper minimizes the use of power, paper and specialty media.</li> <li>• Paper minimizes the amount of paper and specialty media needed for a print job by duplexing each page. Performance may be affected, but print quality is not.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Quiet Mode</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Off</li> <li>On</li> </ul>	<p>Reduces the amount of noise produced by the printer</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting. This setting supports the performance specifications of your printer.</li> <li>• On configures the printer to produce as little noise as possible.</li> <li>• For optimal printing of color-rich documents, set Quiet Mode to Off.</li> <li>• Selecting Photo from the driver may disable Quiet Mode.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Run Initial setup</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	<p>Runs the setup wizard</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• After completing the setup wizard , the default setting becomes No.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
<p><b>Keyboard</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Keyboard Type <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>English</li> <li>Francais</li> <li>Francais Canadien</li> <li>Deutsch</li> <li>Italiano</li> <li>Espanol</li> <li>Greek</li> <li>Dansk</li> <li>Norsk</li> <li>Nederlands</li> <li>Svenska</li> <li>Suomi</li> <li>Portuguese</li> <li>Russian</li> <li>Polski</li> <li>Swiss German</li> <li>Swiss French</li> <li>Korean</li> <li>Magyar</li> <li>Turkce</li> <li>Cesky</li> <li>Simplified Chinese</li> <li>Traditional Chinese</li> <li>Japanese</li> <li>Custom Key [x]</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<p>Specifies the language for the printer control panel keyboard</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Keyboard Type specifies the language for the printer control panel keyboard.</li> <li>• Custom Key [x] allows the user to assign a value to a custom key setting. A maximum of 6 characters is allowed.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Paper Sizes</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>US</li> <li>Metric</li> </ul>	<p>Specifies the default paper measurements</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The initial setting is determined by your Country or region selection in the initial setup wizard.</li> <li>• Changing this setting also changes the Units of Measurement setting in the Universal Setup menu and the default for each input source in the Paper Size/Type menu.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
<p><b>Displayed Information</b></p> <p>Left side</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IP Address</li> <li>Hostname</li> <li>Contact Name</li> <li>Location</li> <li>Date/Time</li> <li>mDNS/DDNS Service Name</li> <li>Zero Configuration Name</li> <li>Custom Text 1</li> <li>Custom Text 2</li> <li>Model Name</li> <li>None</li> </ul> <p>Right side</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Date/Time</li> <li>mDNS/DDNS Service Name</li> <li>Zero Configuration Name</li> <li>Custom Text 1</li> <li>Custom Text 2</li> <li>Model Name</li> <li>None</li> <li>IP Address</li> <li>Hostname</li> <li>Contact Name</li> <li>Location</li> <li>Custom Text 1 [text entry]</li> <li>Custom Text 2 [text entry]</li> </ul>	<p>Specifies what is displayed on the upper left and right corners of the home screen</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IP Address is the factory default setting for Left side.</li> <li>• Date/Time is the factory default setting for Right side.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
<p><b>Displayed Information</b></p> <p>Black Toner</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When to display <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not display</li> <li>Display</li> </ul> </li> <li>Message to Display <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Default</li> <li>Alternate</li> </ul> </li> <li>Default Message [text entry]</li> <li>Alternate Message [text entry]</li> </ul> <p>Cyan Toner</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When to display <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not display</li> <li>Display</li> </ul> </li> <li>Message to Display <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Default</li> <li>Alternate</li> </ul> </li> <li>Default Message [text entry]</li> <li>Alternate Message [text entry]</li> </ul> <p>Magenta Toner</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When to display <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not display</li> <li>Display</li> </ul> </li> <li>Message to Display <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Default</li> <li>Alternate</li> </ul> </li> <li>Default Message [text entry]</li> <li>Alternate Message [text entry]</li> </ul>	<p>Defines a custom message or notification for Black, Cyan, and Magenta Toner when a warning or error is encountered.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Do not display” is the factory default setting for When to display.</li> <li>• Default is the factory default setting for Message to Display.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
<p><b>Displayed Information</b></p> <p>Yellow Toner</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When to display <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not display</li> <li>Display</li> </ul> </li> <li>Message to Display <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Default</li> <li>Alternate</li> </ul> </li> <li>Default Message [text entry]</li> <li>Alternate Message [text entry]</li> </ul> <p>Waste Toner Bottle</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Display <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No</li> <li>Yes</li> </ul> </li> <li>Message to Display <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Default</li> <li>Alternate</li> </ul> </li> <li>Default Message [text entry]</li> <li>Alternate Message [text entry]</li> </ul> <p>Fuser</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When to display <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not display</li> <li>Display</li> </ul> </li> <li>Message to Display <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Default</li> <li>Alternate</li> </ul> </li> <li>Default Message [text entry]</li> <li>Alternate Message [text entry]</li> </ul>	<p>Defines a custom message or notification for Yellow Toner, Waste Toner Bottle, and Fuser when a warning or error is encountered.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Do not display” is the factory default setting for When to display.</li> <li>• Default is the factory default setting for Message to Display.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
<p><b>Displayed Information</b></p> <p>Transfer Module</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When to display <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not display</li> <li>Display</li> </ul> </li> <li>Message to Display <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Default</li> <li>Alternate</li> </ul> </li> <li>Default Message [text entry]</li> <li>Alternate Message [text entry]</li> </ul> <p>Paper Jam</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Display <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No</li> <li>Yes</li> </ul> </li> <li>Message to Display <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Default</li> <li>Alternate</li> </ul> </li> <li>Default Message [text entry]</li> <li>Alternate Message [text entry]</li> </ul> <p>Load Paper</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Display <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No</li> <li>Yes</li> </ul> </li> <li>Message to Display <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Default</li> <li>Alternate</li> </ul> </li> <li>Default Message [text entry]</li> <li>Alternate Message [text entry]</li> </ul>	<p>Defines a custom message or notification for Transfer Module, Paper Jam, and Load Paper when a warning or error is encountered.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Do not display” is the factory default setting for When to display.</li> <li>• Default is the factory default setting for Message to Display.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
<p><b>Displayed Information</b></p> <p>Service Errors</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Display <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No</li> <li>Yes</li> </ul> </li> <li>Message to Display <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Default</li> <li>Alternate</li> </ul> </li> <li>Default Message [text entry]</li> <li>Alternate Message [text entry]</li> </ul>	<p>Defines a custom message or notification for Service Errors when a warning or error is encountered.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “Do not display” is the factory default setting for When to display.</li> <li>• Default is the factory default setting for Message to Display.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Home screen customization</b></p> <p>Change Language</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not display</li> <li>Display</li> </ul> <p>Search Held Jobs</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Display</li> <li>Do not display</li> </ul> <p>Held Jobs</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Display</li> <li>Do not display</li> </ul> <p>USB Drive</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Display</li> <li>Do not display</li> </ul> <p>Profiles</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not display</li> <li>Display</li> </ul> <p>Bookmarks</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not display</li> <li>Display</li> </ul> <p>Jobs by user</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not display</li> <li>Display</li> </ul>	<p>Determines which icons appear on the home screen</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Additional buttons can be added to the home screen, and default buttons can be removed.</p>
<p><b>Date Format</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[MM-DD-YYYY]</li> <li>[DD-MM-YYYY]</li> <li>[YYYY-MM-DD]</li> </ul>	<p>Specifies the format for the printer date</p>
<p><b>Time Format</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>12 hour</li> <li>24 hour</li> </ul>	<p>Specifies the format for the printer time</p> <p><b>Note:</b> 12 hour is the factory default setting.</p>
<p><b>Screen Brightness</b></p> <p>20–100</p>	<p>Specifies the brightness of the printer control panel screen</p> <p><b>Note:</b> 100 is the factory default setting.</p>

Menu item	Description
<p><b>Output Lighting</b></p> <p>Normal/Standby Mode</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Off</li> <li>Dim</li> <li>Bright</li> </ul> <p>Sleep Mode</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Off</li> <li>Dim</li> <li>Bright</li> </ul>	<p>Sets the amount of light from the optional output bin</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Dim is the factory default setting for Normal/Standby Mode if Eco-Mode is set to Energy or Energy/Paper.</li> <li>• Bright is the factory default setting for Normal/Standby Mode if Eco-Mode is set to Off or Paper.</li> <li>• Off is the factory default setting for Sleep Mode if Eco-Mode is set to Energy or Energy/Paper.</li> <li>• Dim is the factory default setting for Sleep Mode if Eco-Mode is set to Off or Paper.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Error Lighting</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>On</li> <li>Off</li> </ul>	<p>Determines if indicator lights will blink when the printer encounters errors.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.</p>
<p><b>Audio Feedback</b></p> <p>Button Feedback</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>On</li> <li>Off</li> </ul> <p>Volume</p> <p>1–10</p>	<p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On is the factory default setting for Button Feedback.</li> <li>• 5 is the factory default setting for Volume.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Show Bookmarks</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	<p>Determines whether the Bookmarks icon is displayed</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The Bookmarks icon appears inside Held Jobs. If Show Bookmarks is set to No, then the Held Jobs icon is only displayed on the home screen if one or more held jobs exist on the printer.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Web Page Refresh Rate</b></p> <p>30–300</p>	<p>Specifies the number of seconds between Embedded Web Server refreshes</p> <p><b>Note:</b> 120 seconds is the factory default setting.</p>
<p><b>Contact Name</b></p>	<p>Specifies a contact name for the printer</p>
<p><b>Location</b></p>	<p>Specifies the location of the printer</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The location will be stored on the Embedded Web Server.</p>

Menu item	Description
<p><b>Alarms</b></p> <p>Alarm Control</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Single</li> <li>Continuous</li> <li>Off</li> </ul> <p>Cartridge Alarm</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Single</li> <li>Continuous</li> <li>Off</li> </ul> <p>Staple Alarm</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Off</li> <li>Single</li> <li>Continuous</li> </ul> <p>Hole Punch Alarm</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Off</li> <li>Single</li> <li>Continuous</li> </ul>	<p>Sets an alarm to sound when the printer requires operator intervention</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Single is the factory default setting for Alarm Control and Cartridge Alarm. Single sounds three quick beeps.</li> <li>• Off is the factory default setting for Staple Alarm and Hole Punch Alarm.</li> <li>• Continuous repeats three beeps every 10 seconds.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Timeouts</b></p> <p>Standby Mode</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Disabled</li> <li>2–240</li> </ul>	<p>Specifies the number of minutes of inactivity before the system enters a lower power state</p> <p><b>Note:</b> 15 minutes is the factory default setting.</p>
<p><b>Timeouts</b></p> <p>Sleep Mode</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Disabled</li> <li>1–240</li> </ul>	<p>Specifies the number of minutes of inactivity before some systems begin entering a minimum power state</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 30 minutes is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• A lower setting conserves more energy, but may require longer warm-up times.</li> <li>• Select the lowest setting if the printer shares an electrical circuit with room lighting.</li> <li>• Select a high setting if the printer is in constant use. Under most circumstances, this keeps the printer ready to print with minimum warm-up time.</li> <li>• Sleep Mode does not interact with Standby Mode.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Timeouts</b></p> <p>Screen Timeout</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>15–300</li> </ul>	<p>Sets the amount of time (in seconds) the printer waits before returning to a <b>Ready</b> state</p> <p><b>Note:</b> 30 seconds is the factory default setting.</p>

Menu item	Description
<p><b>Timeouts</b></p> <p>Print Timeout</p> <p>Disabled</p> <p>1–255</p>	<p>Sets the amount of time (in seconds) the printer waits to receive an end-of-job message before canceling the remainder of the print job</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 90 seconds is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• When the timer expires, any partially printed page still in the printer is printed, and then the printer checks to see if any new print jobs are waiting.</li> <li>• Print Timeout is available only when using PCL emulation. This setting has no effect on PostScript emulation print jobs.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Timeouts</b></p> <p>Wait Timeout</p> <p>Disabled</p> <p>15–65535</p>	<p>Sets the amount of time (in seconds) the printer waits for additional data before canceling a print job</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 40 seconds is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Wait Timeout is available only when the printer is using PostScript emulation. This setting has no effect on PCL emulation print jobs.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Timeouts</b></p> <p>Job Hold Timeout</p> <p>Disabled</p> <p>5–255</p>	<p>Sets the amount of time (in seconds) the printer waits for user intervention before it holds jobs that require unavailable resources and continues to process other jobs in the print queue</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 30 seconds is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This menu item appears only when a printer hard disk is installed.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Print Recovery</b></p> <p>Auto Continue</p> <p>Disabled</p> <p>5–255</p>	<p>Lets the printer automatically continue printing from certain offline situations when not resolved within the specified time period</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Disabled is the factory default setting.</p>
<p><b>Print Recovery</b></p> <p>Jam Recovery</p> <p>Auto</p> <p>On</p> <p>Off</p>	<p>Specifies whether the printer reprints jammed pages</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting. The printer reprints jammed pages unless the memory required to hold the pages is needed for other printer tasks.</li> <li>• On sets the printer to always reprint jammed pages.</li> <li>• Off sets the printer to never reprint jammed pages.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Print Recovery</b></p> <p>Page Protect</p> <p>Off</p> <p>On</p>	<p>Lets the printer successfully print a page that may not have printed otherwise</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting. Off prints a partial page when there is not enough memory to print the whole page.</li> <li>• On sets the printer to process the whole page so the entire page prints.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
<b>Press Sleep Button</b> Sleep Hibernate Do Nothing	Determines how the printer responds when pressing the Sleep button when the printer is idle  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sleep is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Sleep or Hibernate sets the printer to operate at a lower power configuration.</li> <li>• If the printer is in Sleep Mode, the touch screen appears off and the Sleep button turns amber in color.</li> <li>• Touch anywhere on the touch screen or press a button on the printer control panel to exit Sleep Mode.</li> <li>• If the printer is in Hibernate mode, the touch screen is completely off and the Sleep button turns amber in color and is blinking.</li> <li>•</li> </ul>
<b>Press and Hold Sleep Button</b> Do Nothing Sleep Hibernate	Determines how the printer responds when pressing the Sleep button when the printer is idle  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do Nothing is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Sleep or Hibernate sets the printer to operate at a lower power configuration.</li> <li>• If the printer is in Sleep Mode, the touch screen appears off and the Sleep button turns amber in color.</li> <li>• Press and hold the Sleep button for 3 seconds or longer to enter Hibernate mode.</li> <li>• Touch anywhere on the touch screen or press a button on the printer control panel to exit Sleep Mode.</li> </ul>
<b>Factory Defaults</b> Do Not Restore Restore Now	Returns the printer settings to the factory default settings  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do Not Restore is the factory default setting. Do Not Restore keeps the user-defined settings.</li> <li>• Restore Now returns all printer settings to the factory default settings except Network/Ports menu settings. All downloads stored in RAM are deleted. Downloads stored in flash memory or on a printer hard disk are not affected.</li> </ul>

## Flash Drive menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Copies</b> 1-999	Specifies a default number of copies for each print job  <b>Note:</b> 1 is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
<b>Paper Source</b> Tray [x] MP Feeder Manual Paper Manuel Envelope	Sets a default paper source for all print jobs <b>Note:</b> Tray 1 (standard tray) is the factory default setting.
<b>Color</b> Color Black Only	Generates color outputs <b>Note:</b> Color is the factory default setting.
<b>Collate</b> On (1,2,1,2,1,2) Off (1,1,1,2,2,2)	Stacks the pages of a print job in sequence when printing multiple copies <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting.
<b>Sides (Duplex)</b> 1 sided 2 sided	Specifies whether prints are on one side or on both sides of the paper <b>Note:</b> 1 sided is the factory default setting.
<b>Staple</b> Off On	Specifies whether printed output is stapled <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This menu item only appears if the printer is equipped with a stapler.</li> </ul>
<b>Hole Punch</b> Off On	Specifies whether printed output has punched holes <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This menu item only appears if the printer is equipped with a puncher.</li> </ul>
<b>Hole Punch Mode</b> 2 holes 3 holes 4 holes	Determines the type of punch finishing performed on a printed output <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 3 holes is the US factory default setting. 4 holes is the international factory default setting.</li> <li>• This menu item only appears if the printer is equipped with a puncher.</li> </ul>
<b>Duplex Binding</b> Long Edge Short Edge	Defines the way duplex pages are bound and how the printing on the back of the page is oriented in relation to the printing on the front of the page <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Long Edge is the factory default setting. Long edge assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape).</li> <li>• Short edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).</li> </ul>
<b>Paper Saver Orientation</b> Auto Landscape Portrait	Specifies the orientation of a multiple-page document <b>Note:</b> Auto is the factory default setting. The printer chooses between portrait and landscape.

Menu item	Description
<b>Paper Saver</b> Off 2-Up 3-Up 4-Up 6-Up 9-Up 12-Up 16-Up	Specifies that multiple-page images be printed on one side of a paper <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The number selected is the number of page images that will print per side.</li> </ul>
<b>Paper Saver Border</b> None Solid	Prints a border around each page image when using Paper Saver <b>Note:</b> None is the factory default setting.
<b>Paper Saver Ordering</b> Horizontal Reverse Horizontal Reverse Vertical Vertical	Specifies the positioning of multiple-page images when using Paper Saver <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Horizontal is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Positioning depends on the number of page images and whether they are in portrait or landscape orientation.</li> </ul>
<b>Separator Sheets</b> None Between Copies Between Jobs Between Pages	Specifies whether blank separator sheets are inserted <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Between Copies inserts a blank sheet between each copy of a print job if Collation is set to On. If Collation is set to Off, then a blank page is inserted between each set of printed pages, such as after all page 1's and after all page 2's.</li> <li>• Between Jobs inserts a blank sheet between print jobs.</li> <li>• Between Pages inserts a blank sheet between each page of the print job. This setting is useful when printing transparencies or inserting blank pages in a document for notes.</li> </ul>
<b>Separator Sheet Source</b> Tray [x] Manual Feeder	Specifies the paper source for separator sheets <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tray 1 (standard tray) is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• From the Paper menu, Configure MP must be set to Cassette in order for Manual Feeder to appear as a menu setting.</li> </ul>
<b>Blank Pages</b> Do Not Print Print	Specifies whether blank pages are inserted in a print job <b>Note:</b> Do Not Print is the factory default setting.

## Setup menu

Menu item	Description
<p><b>Printer Language</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>PS Emulation</li> <li>PCL Emulation</li> </ul>	<p>Sets the default printer language</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PS Emulation is the factory default setting. PostScript emulation uses a PS interpreter for processing print jobs.</li> <li>• PCL Emulation uses a PCL interpreter for processing print jobs.</li> <li>• Setting a printer language default does not prevent a software program from sending print jobs that use another printer language.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Job Waiting</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Off</li> <li>On</li> </ul>	<p>Specifies if print jobs are removed from the print queue when they require unavailable printer options or custom settings. These print jobs are stored in a separate print queue, so other jobs print normally. When the missing information and/or options are obtained, the stored jobs print.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This menu item appears only if a non-read-only printer hard disk is installed. This requirement ensures that stored jobs are not deleted if the printer loses power.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Print Area</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Normal</li> <li>Fit to Page</li> <li>Whole Page</li> </ul>	<p>Sets the logical and physical printable area</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Normal is the factory default setting. When attempting to print data in the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, the printer clips the image at the boundary.</li> <li>• Fit to Page fits the page content into the selected paper size.</li> <li>• Whole Page allows the image to be moved into the non-printable area defined by the Normal setting, but the printer clips the image at the Normal setting boundary. This setting affects only pages printed using a PCL 5e interpreter and has no effect on pages printed using the PCL XL or PostScript interpreter.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Black Only Mode</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Off</li> <li>On</li> </ul>	<p>Sets the printer to print text and graphics using only the black print cartridge</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.</p>

Menu item	Description
<b>Download Target</b> RAM Flash Disk	Sets the storage location for downloads  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• RAM is the factory default setting. Storing downloads in RAM is temporary.</li> <li>• Storing downloads in flash memory or on a printer hard disk places them in permanent storage. Downloads remain in flash memory or on the printer hard disk even when the printer is turned off.</li> <li>• This menu item appears only if a flash and/or disk option is installed.</li> </ul>
<b>Resource Save</b> Off On	Specifies how the printer handles temporary downloads, such as fonts and macros stored in RAM, when the printer receives a print job that requires more memory than is available  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting. Off sets the printer to retain downloads only until memory is needed. Downloads are deleted in order to process print jobs.</li> <li>• On sets the printer to retain downloads during language changes and printer resets. If the printer runs out of memory, <b>38 Memory Full</b> appears, but downloads are not deleted.</li> </ul>
<b>Print All Order</b> Alphabetical Oldest First Newest First	Specifies the order in which held and confidential jobs are printed when Print All is selected  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Alphabetical is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Print jobs always appear in alphabetical order on the printer control panel.</li> </ul>

## Job Accounting menu

**Note:** This menu item appears only if a formatted, non-defective printer hard disk is installed. The printer hard disk cannot be read/write- or write-protected.

Menu item	Description
<b>Job Accounting Log</b> Off On	Determines if the printer creates a log of the print jobs it receives  <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Job Accounting Utilities</b>	Lets you print and delete log files or export them to a flash drive
<b>Accounting Log Frequency</b> Monthly Weekly	Determines how often a log file is created  <b>Note:</b> Monthly is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
<b>Log Action at End of Frequency</b> None E-mail Current Log E-mail & Delete Current Log Post Current Log Post & Delete Current Log	Determines how the printer responds when the frequency threshold expires <b>Note:</b> None is the factory default setting.
<b>Disk Near Full Level</b> 1-99 Off	Specifies the maximum size of the log file before the printer executes the Disk Near Full Action <b>Note:</b> 5MB is the factory default setting.
<b>Disk Near Full Action</b> None E-mail Current Log E-mail & Delete Current Log E-mail & Delete Oldest Log Post Current Log Post & Delete Current Log Post & Delete Oldest Log Delete Current Log Delete Oldest Log Delete All Logs Delete All But Current	Determines how the printer responds when the printer hard disk is nearly full <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The value defined in Disk Near Full Level determines when this action is triggered.</li> </ul>
<b>Disk Full Action</b> None E-mail & Delete Current Log E-mail & Delete Oldest Log Post & Delete Current Log Post & Delete Oldest Log Delete Current Log Delete Oldest Log Delete All Logs Delete All But Current	Determines how the printer responds when disk usage reaches the maximum limit (100MB) <b>Note:</b> None is the factory default setting.
<b>URL to Post Logs</b>	Determines where the printer posts job accounting logs
<b>E-mail Address to Send Logs</b>	Specifies the e-mail address to which the device sends job accounting logs
<b>Log File Prefix</b>	<b>Note:</b> The current host name defined in the TCP/IP menu is used as the default log file prefix.

## Finishing menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Sides (Duplex)</b> 1 sided 2 sided	Specifies whether duplex (2-sided) printing is set as the default for all print jobs <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1 sided is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• You can set 2-sided printing from the software program. For Windows users, click <b>File &gt; Print</b>, and then click <b>Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup</b>. For Macintosh users, choose <b>File &gt; Print</b>, and then adjust the settings from the print dialog and pop-up menus.</li> </ul>
<b>Duplex Binding</b> Long Edge Short Edge	Defines the way duplexed pages are bound and how the printing on the back of the page is oriented in relation to the printing on the front of the page <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Long Edge is the factory default setting. Long edge assumes binding along the long edge of the page (left edge for portrait and top edge for landscape).</li> <li>• Short edge assumes binding along the short edge of the page (top edge for portrait and left edge for landscape).</li> </ul>
<b>Copies</b> 1–999	Specifies the default number of copies for each print job <b>Note:</b> 1 is the factory default setting.
<b>Blank Pages</b> Do Not Print Print	Specifies whether blank pages are inserted in a print job <b>Note:</b> Do Not Print is the factory default setting.
<b>Collate</b> Off (1,1,1,2,2,2) On (1,2,1,2,1,2)	Stacks the pages of a print job in sequence when printing multiple copies <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• On stacks the print job in sequence.</li> </ul>
<b>Separator Sheets</b> None Between Copies Between Jobs Between Pages	Specifies whether blank separator sheets are inserted <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Between Copies inserts a blank sheet between each copy of a print job if Collate is set to On. If Collate is set to Off, a blank page is inserted between each set of printed pages, such as after all page 1's and after all page 2's.</li> <li>• Between Jobs inserts a blank sheet between print jobs.</li> <li>• Between Pages inserts a blank sheet between each page of a print job. This setting is useful when printing transparencies or when inserting blank pages in a document.</li> </ul>
<b>Separator Source</b> Tray [x] Manual Feeder	Specifies the paper source for separator sheets <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tray 1 (standard tray) is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• From the Paper menu, Configure MP must be set to Cassette for Multi-Purpose Feeder to appear as a menu setting.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
<b>Paper Saver</b> Off 2-Up 3-Up 4-Up 6-Up 9-Up 12-Up 16-Up	Specifies that multiple-page images be printed on one side of a paper <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The number selected is the number of page images that will print per side.</li> </ul>
<b>Paper Saver Ordering</b> Horizontal Reverse Horizontal Reverse Vertical Vertical	Specifies the positioning of multiple-page images when using Paper Saver <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Horizontal is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Positioning depends on the number of page images and whether they are in portrait or landscape orientation.</li> </ul>
<b>Paper Saver Orientation</b> Auto Landscape Portrait	Specifies the orientation of a multiple-page document <b>Note:</b> Auto is the factory default setting. The printer chooses between portrait and landscape.
<b>Paper Saver Border</b> None Solid	Prints a border around each page image when using Paper Saver <b>Note:</b> None is the factory default setting.
<b>Staple Job</b> Off On	Specifies whether printed output is stapled <b>Note:</b> This menu item only appears if the printer is equipped with a stapler.
<b>Hole Punch</b> Off On	Specifies whether printed output has punched holes <b>Note:</b> This menu item only appears if the printer is equipped with a puncher.
<b>Hole Punch Mode</b> 2 holes 3 holes 4 holes	Determines the type of punch finishing performed on a printed output <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 3 holes is the US factory default setting. 4 holes is the international factory default setting.</li> <li>• This menu item only appears if the printer is equipped with a puncher.</li> </ul>
<b>Offset Pages</b> None Between Copies Between Jobs	Offsets pages at certain instances <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• None is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Between Copies offsets each copy of a print job if Collate is set to On. If Collate is set to Off, each set of printed pages are offset, such as all page 1's and all page 2's.</li> <li>• Between Jobs sets the same offset position for the entire print job regardless of the number of copies printed.</li> <li>• This menu item only appears if a stapler option is installed.</li> </ul>

## Quality menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Print Mode</b> Color Black Only	Specifies whether images are printed in monochrome grayscale or in color <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Color is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The printer driver is capable of overriding this setting.</li> </ul>
<b>Color Correction</b> Auto Off Manual	Adjusts the color output on the printed page <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto is the factory default setting. Auto applies different color conversion tables to each object on the printed page.</li> <li>• Manual allows customization of color tables using the settings available from the Manual Color menu.</li> <li>• Due to the differences in additive and subtractive colors, certain colors that appear on computer screens are impossible to duplicate on a printed page.</li> </ul>
<b>Print Resolution</b> 4800 CQ 1200 dpi	Specifies the printed output resolution <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 4800 CQ is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• 1200 dpi provides the highest resolution output, and increases gloss.</li> </ul>
<b>Toner Darkness</b> 1–5	Lightens or darkens the printed output <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 4 is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Selecting a smaller number can help conserve toner.</li> <li>• If Print Mode is set to Black Only, a setting of 5 increases toner density and darkness for all print jobs.</li> <li>• If Print Mode is set to Color, a setting of 5 is the same as a setting of 4.</li> </ul>
<b>Enhance Fine Lines</b> Off On	Enables a print mode preferable for files such as architectural drawings, maps, electrical circuit diagrams, and flow charts <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• You can set this option from the software program. For Windows users, click <b>File &gt; Print</b>, and then click <b>Properties, Preferences, Options, or Setup</b>. For Macintosh users, choose <b>File &gt; Print</b>, and then adjust the settings from the print dialog and pop-up menus.</li> <li>• To set this option using the Embedded Web Server, type the network printer IP address in a browser window.</li> </ul>
<b>Color Saver</b> Off On	Reduces the amount of toner used for graphics and images. The amount of toner used for text is not reduced. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• On overrides Toner Darkness settings.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
<b>RGB Brightness</b> -6 to 6	Adjusts brightness in color outputs <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This does not affect files where CMYK color specifications are used.</li> </ul>
<b>RGB Contrast</b> 0-5	Adjusts contrast in color outputs <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This does not affect files where CMYK color specifications are used.</li> </ul>
<b>RGB Saturation</b> 0-5	Adjusts saturation in color outputs <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0 is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This does not affect files where CMYK color specifications are used.</li> </ul>
<b>Color Balance</b> Cyan -5 to 5 Magenta -5 to 5 Yellow -5 to 5 Black -5 to 5 Reset Defaults	Adjusts color in printed output by increasing or decreasing the amount of toner used for each color <b>Note:</b> 0 is the factory default setting.
<b>Color Samples</b> sRGB Display sRGB Vivid Display—True Black Vivid Off—RGB US CMYK Euro CMYK Vivid CMYK Off—CMYK	Prints sample pages for each of the RGB and CMYK color conversion tables used in the printer <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Selecting any setting prints the sample.</li> <li>• Color samples consist of a series of colored boxes along with the RGB or CMYK combination that creates the color observed. These pages can be used to help decide which combinations to use to get the desired printed output.</li> <li>• From a browser window, type the IP address of the printer to access a complete list of color sample pages from the Embedded Web Server.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
<p><b>Manual Color</b></p> <p>RGB Image</p> <p>    sRGB Display</p> <p>    Display—True Black</p> <p>    sRGB Vivid</p> <p>    Off</p> <p>    Vivid</p> <p>RGB Text</p> <p>    sRGB Vivid</p> <p>    Off</p> <p>    Vivid</p> <p>    sRGB Display</p> <p>    Display—True Black</p> <p>RGB Graphics</p> <p>    sRGB Vivid</p> <p>    Off</p> <p>    Vivid</p> <p>    sRGB Display</p> <p>    Display—True Black</p>	<p>Customizes the RGB color conversions</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• sRGB Display is the factory default setting for RGB Image. This applies a color conversion table to an output that matches the colors displayed on a computer monitor.</li> <li>• sRGB Vivid is the factory default setting for RGB Text and RGB Graphics. sRGB Vivid applies a color table that increases saturation. This is preferred for business graphics and text.</li> <li>• Vivid applies a color conversion table that produces brighter, more saturated colors.</li> <li>• Display—True Black applies a color conversion table that uses only black toner for neutral gray colors.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Manual Color</b></p> <p>CMYK Image</p> <p>    US CMYK</p> <p>    Euro CMYK</p> <p>    Vivid CMYK</p> <p>    Off</p> <p>CMYK Text</p> <p>    US CMYK</p> <p>    Euro CMYK</p> <p>    Vivid CMYK</p> <p>    Off</p> <p>CMYK Graphics</p> <p>    US CMYK</p> <p>    Euro CMYK</p> <p>    Vivid CMYK</p> <p>    Off</p>	<p>Customizes the CMYK color conversions</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• US CMYK is the US factory default setting. US CMYK applies a color conversion table that tries to produce output that matches SWOP color output.</li> <li>• Euro CMYK is the international factory default setting. Euro CMYK applies a color conversion table that tries to produce output that matches EuroScale color output.</li> <li>• Vivid CMYK increases color saturation for the US CMYK color conversion table.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Spot Color Replacement</b></p>	<p>Provides the capability to assign specific CMYK values to named spot colors</p>
<p><b>Color Adjust</b></p>	<p>Initiates a recalibration of color conversion tables and allows the printer to make adjustments for color variations in output</p> <p><b>Notes:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Calibrating starts when the menu is selected. <b>Calibrating</b> appears on the display until the process is finished.</li> <li>• Color variations in output sometimes result from changeable conditions such as room temperature and humidity. Color adjustments are made on printer algorithms. Color alignment is also recalibrated in this process.</li> </ul>

## Utilities menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Remove Held Jobs</b> Confidential Held Not Restored All	Removes confidential and held jobs from the printer hard disk <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Selecting a setting affects only print jobs that are resident in the printer. Bookmarks, print jobs on flash drives, and other types of held jobs are not affected.</li> <li>• Not Restored removes all Print and Hold jobs that are <i>not</i> restored from the printer hard disk or memory.</li> </ul>
<b>Format Flash</b> Yes No	Formats the flash memory <b>Warning—Potential Damage:</b> Do not turn off the printer while the flash memory is being formatted. <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Yes deletes all data stored in flash memory.</li> <li>• No cancels the format request.</li> <li>• Flash memory refers to the memory added by installing a flash memory option card in the printer.</li> <li>• A flash memory option card must be installed in the printer and operating properly for this menu item to be available.</li> <li>• The flash memory option card must not be read/write- or write-protected.</li> </ul>
<b>Delete Downloads on Disk</b> Delete Now Do Not Delete	Removes downloads from the printer hard disk, including all held jobs, buffered jobs, and parked jobs <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Delete Now configures the printer control panel to return to the originating screen after the deletion process is completed.</li> <li>• Do Not Delete sets the printer control panel to return to the main Utilities menu.</li> </ul>
<b>Activate Hex Trace</b>	Assists in isolating the source of a print job problem <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When activated, all data sent to the printer is printed in hexadecimal and character representation, and control codes are not executed.</li> <li>• To exit or deactivate Hex Trace, turn the printer off or reset the printer.</li> </ul>
<b>Coverage Estimator</b> Off On	Provides an estimate of the percentage coverage of toner on a page. The estimate is printed on a separate page at the end of each print job. <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.

## XPS menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Print Error Pages</b> Off On	Prints a page containing information on errors, including XML markup errors <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.

## PDF menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Scale to Fit</b> No Yes	Scales page content to fit the selected paper size <b>Note:</b> No is the factory default setting.
<b>Annotations</b> Do Not Print Print	Prints annotations in a PDF <b>Note:</b> Do Not Print is the factory default setting.

## PostScript menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Print PS Error</b> Off On	Prints a page containing the PostScript error <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Lock PS Startup Mode</b> Off On	Enables users to disable the SysStart file <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Font Priority</b> Resident Flash/Disk	Establishes the font search order <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Resident is the factory default setting.</li><li>• This menu item is available only if a formatted flash memory option card or printer hard disk is installed and operating properly.</li><li>• Make sure the flash memory option or printer hard disk is not read/write-, write-, or password-protected.</li><li>• Job Buffer Size must not be set to 100%.</li></ul>
<b>Image Smoothing</b> Off On	Enhances the contrast and sharpness of low-resolution images and smooths their color transitions <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li><li>• Image Smoothing has no effect on images that are 300 dpi or higher in resolution.</li></ul>

## PCL Emul menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Font Source</b> Resident Disk Download Flash All	Specifies the set of fonts used by the Font Name menu item <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Resident is the factory default setting. It shows the factory default set of fonts downloaded in RAM.</li> <li>• Flash and Disk settings show all fonts resident in that option. Make sure the flash option is properly formatted and is not read/write-, or password-protected.</li> <li>• Download shows all the fonts downloaded in RAM.</li> <li>• All shows all fonts available to any option.</li> </ul>
<b>Font Name</b> RO Courier	Identifies a specific font and where it is stored <b>Note:</b> RO Courier is the factory default setting. The RO Courier format shows the font name, font ID, and storage location in the printer. The font source abbreviation is R for Resident, F for Flash, K for Disk, and D for Download.
<b>Symbol Set</b> 10U PC-8 12U PC-850	Specifies the symbol set for each font name <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 10U PC-8 is the US factory default setting. 12U PC-850 is the international factory default setting.</li> <li>• A symbol set is a set of alphabetical and numeric characters, punctuation, and special symbols. Symbol sets support the different languages or specific programs such as math symbols for scientific text. Only the supported symbol sets are shown.</li> </ul>
<b>PCL Emulation Settings</b> Point Size 1.00–1008.00	Changes the point size for scalable typographic fonts <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 12 is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Point Size refers to the height of the characters in the font. One point equals approximately 1/72 of an inch.</li> <li>• Point sizes can be increased or decreased in 0.25-point increments.</li> </ul>
<b>PCL Emulation Settings</b> Pitch 0.08–100	Specifies the font pitch for scalable monospaced fonts <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 10 is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Pitch refers to the number of fixed-space characters per inch (cpi).</li> <li>• Pitch can be increased or decreased in 0.01-cpi increments.</li> <li>• For non-scalable monospaced fonts, the pitch appears on the display but cannot be changed.</li> </ul>
<b>PCL Emulation Settings</b> Orientation Portrait Landscape	Specifies the orientation of text and graphics on a page <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Portrait is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Portrait prints text and graphics parallel to the short edge of the page.</li> <li>• Landscape prints text and graphics parallel to the long edge of the page.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
<b>PCL Emulation Settings</b> Lines per Page 1–255	Specifies the number of lines that print on each page <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 60 is the US factory default setting. 64 is the international default setting.</li> <li>• The printer sets the amount of space between each line based on the Lines per Page, Paper Size, and Orientation settings. Select the desired Paper Size and Orientation before setting Lines per Page.</li> </ul>
<b>PCL Emulation Settings</b> A4 Width 198 mm 203 mm	Sets the printer to print on A4-size paper <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 198 mm is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• The 203-mm setting sets the width of the page to allow the printing of eighty 10-pitch characters.</li> </ul>
<b>PCL Emulation Settings</b> Auto CR after LF Off On	Specifies whether the printer automatically performs a carriage return (CR) after a line feed (LF) control command <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>PCL Emulation Settings</b> Auto LF after CR Off On	Specifies whether the printer automatically performs a line feed (LF) after a carriage return (CR) control command <b>Note:</b> Off is the factory default setting.
<b>Tray Renumber</b> Assign MP Feeder Off None 0–199 Assign Tray [x] Off None 0–199 Assign Manual Paper Off None 0–199 Assign Manual Env Off None 0–199	Configures the printer to work with printer software or programs that use different source assignments for trays, drawers, and feeders <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• None ignores the Select Paper Feed command. This selection is displayed only when it is selected by the PCL 5e interpreter.</li> <li>• 0–199 allows a custom setting to be assigned.</li> </ul>

Menu item	Description
<p><b>Tray Renumber</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>View Factory Defaults</li> <li>MPF Default = 8</li> <li>T1 Default = 1</li> <li>T2 Default = 4</li> <li>T3 Default = 5</li> <li>T4 Default = 20</li> <li>T5 Default = 21</li> <li>Env Default = 6</li> <li>MPaper Default = 2</li> <li>MEnv Default = 3</li> </ul>	<p>Displays the factory default setting assigned to each tray, drawer, or feeder</p>
<p><b>Tray Renumber</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Restore Defaults</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>No</li> </ul>	<p>Returns all tray, drawer, and feeder assignments to the factory default settings</p>

## HTML menu

Menu Item		Description
<b>Font Name</b> Albertus MT Antique Olive Apple Chancery Arial MT Avant Garde Bodoni Bookman Chicago Clarendon Cooper Black Copperplate Coronet Courier Eurostile Garamond Geneva Gill Sans Goudy Helvetica Hoefler Text Intl CG Times Intl Courier Intl Univers	Joanna MT Letter Gothic Lubalin Graph Marigold MonaLisa Recut Monaco New CenturySbk New York Optima Oxford Palatino StempelGaramond Taffy Times TimesNewRoman Univers Zapf Chancery NewSansMTCS NewSansMTCT New SansMTJA NewSansMTKO	Sets the default font for HTML documents  <b>Note:</b> The Times font is used in HTML documents that do not specify a font.

Menu item	Description
<b>Font Size</b> 1–255 pt	Sets the default font size for HTML documents  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 12 pt is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Font size can be increased in 1-point increments.</li> </ul>
<b>Scale</b> 1–400%	Scales the default font for HTML documents  <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 100% is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Scaling can be increased in 1% increments.</li> </ul>
<b>Orientation</b> Portrait Landscape	Sets the page orientation for HTML documents  <b>Note:</b> Portrait is the factory default setting.

Menu item	Description
<b>Margin Size</b> 8–255 mm	Sets the page margin for HTML documents <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 19 mm is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• Margin size can be increased in 1-mm increments.</li> </ul>
<b>Backgrounds</b> Print Do Not Print	Specifies whether to print backgrounds on HTML documents <b>Note:</b> Print is the factory default setting.

## Image menu

Menu item	Description
<b>Auto Fit</b> On Off	Selects the optimal paper size, scaling, and orientation <b>Note:</b> On is the factory default setting. It overrides scaling and orientation settings for some images.
<b>Invert</b> Off On	Inverts bi-tonal monochrome images <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Off is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• This setting does not apply to GIF or JPEG images.</li> </ul>
<b>Scaling</b> Best Fit Anchor Center Fit Height/Width Fit Height Fit Width Anchor Top Left	Scales the image to fit the selected paper size <b>Notes:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Best Fit is the factory default setting.</li> <li>• When Auto Fit is set to On, Scaling is automatically set to Best Fit.</li> </ul>
<b>Orientation</b> Portrait Landscape Rev Portrait Rev Landscape	Sets the image orientation <b>Note:</b> Portrait is the factory default setting.

## Help menu

The Help menu consists of a series of Help pages that are stored in the printer as PDF files. They contain information about using the printer and performing printing tasks.

English, French, German, and Spanish translations are stored in the printer. Other translations are available on the Lexmark Web site at [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com).

Menu item	Description
Print All Guides	Prints all the guides
Color Quality	Provides information about adjusting and customizing color printing
Print Quality	Provides information about solving print quality issues
Printing Guide	Provides information about loading paper and other speciality media
Media Guide	Provides a list of the paper sizes supported in trays, drawers, and feeders
Print Defects Guide	Provides help in determining the printer part causing a repetitive defect
Menu Map	Provides a list of the printer control panel menus and settings
Information Guide	Provides help in locating additional information
Connection Guide	Provides information about connecting the printer locally (USB) or to a network
Moving Guide	Provides instructions for safely moving the printer
Supplies Guide	Provides part numbers for ordering supplies

# Securing the printer hard disk and other installed memory

## Statement of Volatility

Your printer contains various types of memory that are capable of storing device and network settings, information from embedded solutions, and user data. The types of memory—along with the types of data stored by each—are described below.

- **Volatile memory**—Your device utilizes standard *Random Access Memory* (RAM) to temporarily buffer user data during simple print and copy jobs.
- **Non-volatile memory**—Your device may utilize two forms of non-volatile memory: EEPROM and NAND (flash memory). Both types are used to store the operating system, device settings, network information, scanner and bookmark settings, and embedded solutions.
- **Hard disk memory**—Some devices have a hard disk drive installed. The printer hard disk is designed for device-specific functionality and cannot be used for long term storage for data that is not print-related. The hard disk does not provide the capability for users to extract information, create folders, create disk or network file shares, or FTP information directly from a client device. The hard disk can retain buffered user data from complex scan, print, copy, and fax jobs, as well as form data, and font data.

There are several circumstances under which you might wish to erase the contents of the memory devices installed in your printer. A partial list includes:

- The printer is being decommissioned
- The printer hard drive is being replaced
- The printer is being moved to a different department or location
- The printer is being serviced by someone from outside your organization
- The printer is being removed from your premises for service

## Disposing of a hard drive

**Note:** Not all printers have a hard disk installed.

In high-security environments, it may be necessary to take additional steps to ensure that confidential data stored on the printer hard disk cannot be accessed once the printer—or its hard disk—is removed from your premises. While most data can be erased electronically, you may want to consider one or more of the following actions before disposing of a printer or hard disk:

- **Degaussing**—Flushes the hard drive with a magnetic field that erases stored data
- **Crushing**—Physically compresses the hard disk to break component parts and render them unreadable
- **Milling**—Physically shreds the hard disk into small metal bits

**Note:** While most data can be erased electronically, the only way to guarantee that all data is completely erased is to physically destroy each memory device on which data could have been stored.

# Erasing volatile memory

The volatile memory (RAM) installed on your printer requires a power source to retain information. To erase the buffered data, simply power down the device.

# Erasing non-volatile memory

There are several methods available for erasing data stored in non-volatile memory, depending on the type of memory device installed, and the type of data stored by that device. For information about how to erase each type of information, see the *Embedded Web Server Administrator Guide*.

- **Individual settings**—You can erase individual printer settings using the printer control panel, or the printer Embedded Web Server.
- **Device and network settings**—You can erase device and network settings and restore factory defaults by resetting the NVRAM using the printer Config menu.
- **Security settings**—You can restore factory defaults or erase security settings by selecting a behavior for the Security Reset Jumper in the Embedded Web Server, and then moving a hardware jumper located on the motherboard.
- **Fax data**—If your printer does not contain a hard disk, or you have chosen NAND for fax storage, you can erase fax settings and data by resetting the NVRAM using the printer Config menu.  
  
**Note:** If your printer has a hard disk that has been partitioned for fax storage, you must reformat that partition to erase fax data and settings.
- **Embedded solutions**—You can erase information and settings associated with embedded solutions by uninstalling the solutions, or by restoring factory defaults using the printer Config menu.

# Erasing printer hard disk memory

**Note:** Not all printers have a hard disk installed.

Configuring Disk Wiping in the printer menus enables you to remove residual confidential material left by scan, print, copy, and fax jobs, by securely overwriting files that have been marked for deletion.

## Using the Embedded Web Server

- 1 From the Embedded Web Server, click **Settings > Security > Disk Wiping**.

**Note:** Printers without a hard disk will not display Disk Wiping in the Security menu.

- 2 For Wiping Mode, select one of the following:

- **Auto**—Use this to automatically wipe data following each use (can increase the time between jobs).
- **Manual**—Use this to set up a schedule for disk wiping.

- 3 Click **Submit**.

- 4 From the Security menu, click **Disk Wiping**.

- 5 If you have enabled Manual mode and wish to set up a schedule for disk wiping, click **Scheduled Disk Wiping**.

**Notes:**

- Scheduled Disk Wiping will not be displayed until after Manual mode has been selected and submitted.
  - If you do not wish to schedule disk wiping, you can skip steps 5 and 6.
- 6** Use the Time and Day(s) options to designate when disk wiping should occur, and then click **Add**. Repeat as needed to schedule additional times for disk wiping. When finished, use the browser Back button to return to the Disk Wiping setup screen.

**Note:** Disk wiping can take from several minutes to more than an hour, during which time the printer will be unavailable for other user tasks.

- 7** From the Disk Wiping settings screen, select one of the following for each method of disk wiping (Automatic, Manual, and Scheduled):
- **Single Pass**— This lets you overwrite the printer hard disk in a single pass with a repeating bit pattern.
  - **Multi-pass**—This lets you overwrite the printer hard disk with random bit patterns several times, followed by a verification pass. A secure overwrite is compliant with the DoD 5220.22-M standard for securely erasing data from a hard disk. Highly confidential information should be wiped using this method.
- 8** Click **Submit**.

## Using the printer control panel

- 1** Turn the printer off.
- 2** Hold down **2<sub>ABC</sub>** and **6<sub>MNG</sub>** while turning the printer on. It takes approximately a minute to boot into the Configuration menu.
- Once the printer is fully powered up, the touch screen should display a list of functions, instead of standard home screen icons such as Copy or Fax.
- 3** Release the buttons when the screen with the progress bar appears. The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears.
- 4** Touch **Wipe Disk**, and then touch one of the following:
- **Wipe disk (fast)**—This lets you overwrite the disk with all zeroes in a single pass.
  - **Wipe disk (secure)**—This lets you overwrite the disk with random bit patterns several times, followed by a verification pass. A secure overwrite is compliant with the DoD 5220.22-M standard for securely erasing data from a hard disk. Highly confidential information should be wiped using this method.
- 5** Touch **Yes** to proceed with disk wiping. A status bar will indicate the progress of the disk wiping task.
- Note:** Disk wiping can take from several minutes to more than an hour, during which the printer will be unavailable for other user tasks.
- 6** Touch **Back**, and then **Exit Config Menu**.

The printer will power-on reset, and then return to normal operating mode.

# Configuring printer hard disk encryption

**Note:** Not all printers have a hard disk installed.

Enabling hard disk encryption helps prevent the loss of sensitive data in the event your printer or its hard disk is stolen.

- 1 Turn the printer off.
- 2 Hold down **2 ABC** and **6 MNO** while turning the printer on. It takes approximately a minute to boot into the Configuration menu.  
Once the printer is fully on, the touch screen should display a list of functions, instead of standard home screen icons such as Copy or Fax.
- 3 Release the buttons when the screen with the progress bar appears. The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears.
- 4 Touch **Disk Encryption > Enable**.  
**Warning:** Enabling disk encryption will erase the contents of the printer hard disk.
- 5 Touch **Yes** to proceed with disk wiping. A status bar will indicate the progress of the disk wiping task. After the disk has been encrypted, the printer will return to the Enable/Disable screen.  
**Warning:** Do not turn off the printer during the encryption process. Doing so may result in loss of data.  
**Note:** Disk encryption can take from several minutes to more than an hour, during which the printer will be unavailable for other user tasks.
  - Touch **Yes** to proceed with disk wiping and encryption. A status bar will indicate the progress of the encryption task.
- 6 Touch **Back**, and then **Exit Config Menu**.

The printer will power-on reset, and then return to normal operating mode.

# Maintaining the printer

Periodically, certain tasks are required to maintain optimum print quality.

## Cleaning the exterior of the printer

- 1 Make sure that the printer is turned off and unplugged from the wall outlet.

 **CAUTION—SHOCK HAZARD:** To avoid the risk of electric shock when cleaning the exterior of the printer, unplug the power cord from the wall outlet and disconnect all cables to the printer before proceeding.

- 2 Remove paper from the standard exit bin.

- 3 Dampen a clean, lint-free cloth with water.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not use household cleaners or detergents, as they may damage the finish of the printer.

- 4 Wipe only the outside of the printer, making sure to include the standard exit bin.

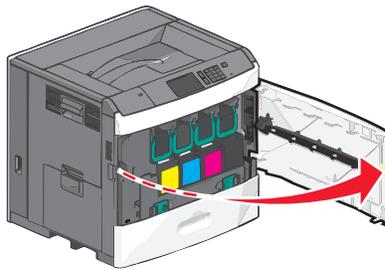
**Warning—Potential Damage:** Using a damp cloth to clean the interior may cause damage to your printer.

- 5 Make sure the paper support and standard exit bin are dry before beginning a new print job.

## Cleaning the printhead lenses

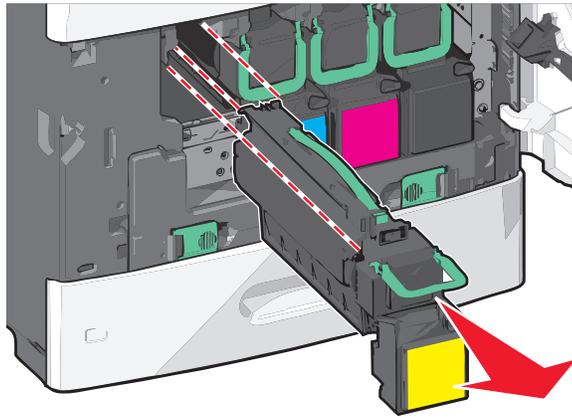
Clean the printhead lenses when you encounter print quality problems.

- 1 Open the front door.

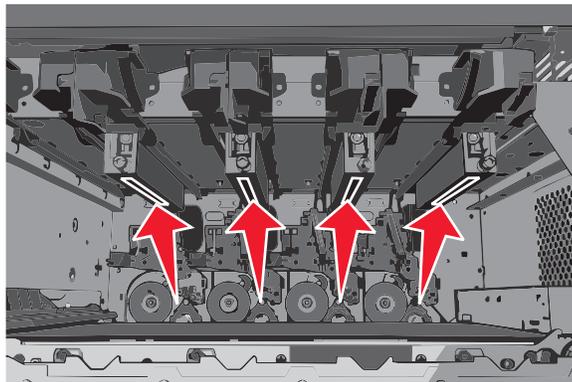


- 2 Remove all print cartridges.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not touch the shiny area on the photoconductor drum. Doing so can damage the photoconductor.



3 Locate the four printhead lenses.

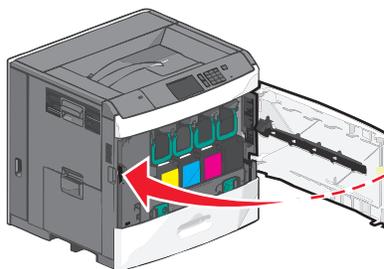


4 Clean the lenses using compressed air.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not touch the printhead lenses.

5 Reinstall the print cartridges.

6 Close the front door.



## Storing supplies

Choose a cool, clean storage area for the printer supplies. Store supplies right side up in their original packing until you are ready to use them.

Do not expose supplies to:

- Direct sunlight
- Temperatures above 35°C (95°F)

- High humidity above 80%
- Salty air
- Corrosive gases
- Heavy dust

## Checking the status of supplies

A message appears on the display when a replacement supply item is needed or when maintenance is required.

### Checking the status of supplies from the printer control panel

From the home screen, touch **Status/Supplies > View Supplies**.

### Checking the status of supplies from a network computer

**Note:** The computer must be connected to the same network as the printer.

**1** Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

**2** Click **Device Status**.

The Device Status page appears, displaying a summary of supply levels.

## Ordering supplies

To order supplies in the U.S., contact Lexmark at 1-800-539-6275 for information about Lexmark authorized supplies dealers in your area. In other countries or regions, visit the Lexmark Web Site at [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com) or contact the place where you purchased the printer.

**Note:** All life estimates for printer supplies assume printing on letter- or A4-size plain paper.

### Ordering a print cartridge

When 88 [color] cartridge low or 88 [color] cartridge nearly low appears, order a new cartridge.

Estimated cartridge yield is based on the ISO/IEC 19798 standard. Extremely low print coverage (less than 1.25%) for extended periods of time may negatively affect actual yield and may cause cartridge parts to fail prior to exhaustion of toner.

## Recommended print cartridge and part number

Part name	Lexmark Return Program Cartridge	Regular cartridge
Cyan Print Cartridge	C792A1CG	C792A2CG
Cyan Extra High Yield Print Cartridge	C792X1CG	C792X2CG
Magenta Print Cartridge	C792A1MG	C792A2MG
Magenta Extra High Yield Print Cartridge	C792X1MG	C792X2MG
Yellow Print Cartridge	C792A1YG	C792A2YG
Yellow Extra High Yield Print Cartridge	C792X1YG	C792X2YG
Black Print Cartridge	C792A1KG	C792A2KG
Black Extra High Yield Print Cartridge	C792X1KG	C792X2KG

## Ordering a fuser or a transfer module

When **80 Fuser Life Warning** or **83 Transfer Module Life Warning** appears, order a replacement fuser or a transfer module.

When **80 Replace Fuser** or **83 Replace Transfer Module** appears, install the new fuser or the new transfer module. For installation information, see the documentation that came with the part.

Part name	Part number
Fuser	40X7102 40X7100 40X7101
Transfer Module	40X7103

## Ordering a waste toner bottle

When **82 Waste toner bottle nearly full** appears, order a replacement waste toner bottle.

When **82 Replace waste toner bottle** appears, replace the waste toner bottle.

**Note:** Waste toner bottle reuse is not recommended.

Part name	Part number
Waste toner bottle	C792X77G

## Ordering staple cartridges

When **Staples Low** or **Staples Empty** appears, order the specified staple cartridge.

For more information, see the illustrations inside the stapler door.

Part name	Part number
Staple Cartridges–3 pack (Since a pack contains 5,000 staples, a 3-pack contains 15,000 staples.)	25A0013

## Ordering a cleaning kit

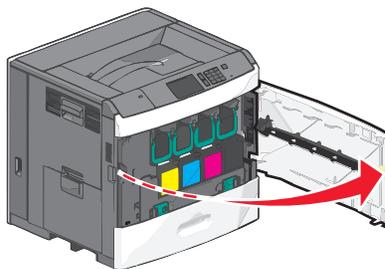
Use the wet and dry wipes from the cleaning kit to clean the touch screen.

Part name	Part number
Cleaning kit (wet and dry wipes)	40X0392

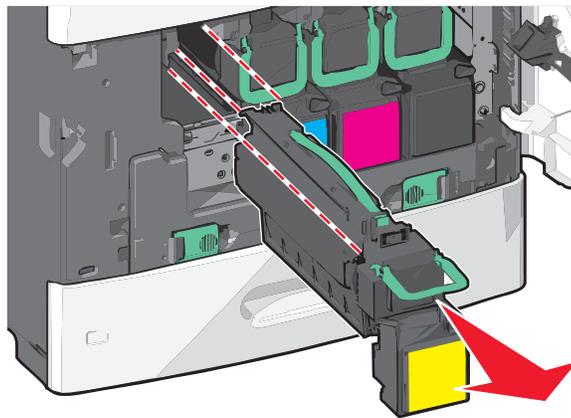
## Replacing supplies

### Replacing a print cartridge

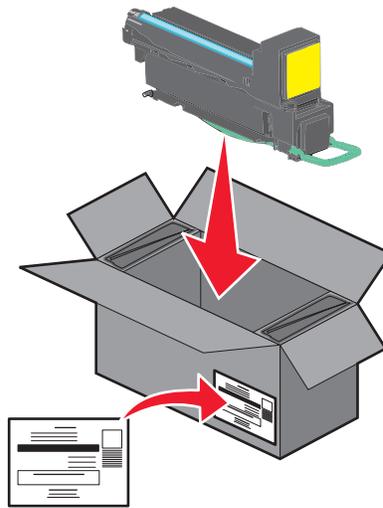
- 1 Open the front door.



- 2 Lift the green handle and pull the print cartridge. Grasp the top handle and lift the cartridge out of the machine.

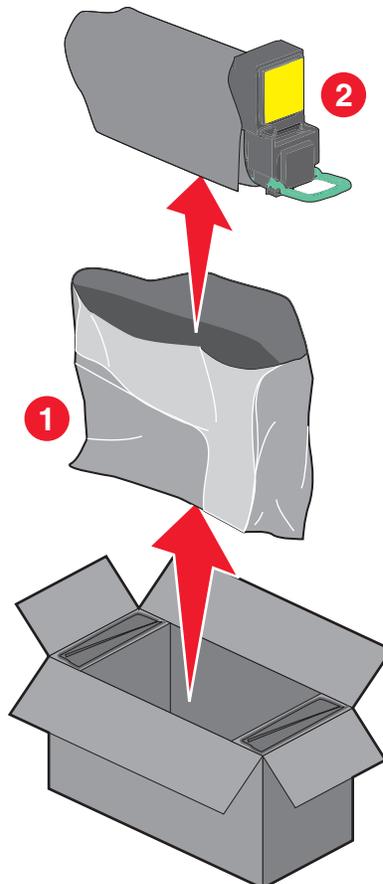


- 3 Place the old cartridge in the replacement cartridge shipping box, and then attach the return label to the box for shipping.

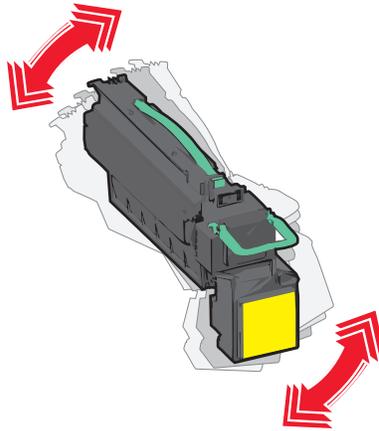


- 4 Unpack a new print cartridge.

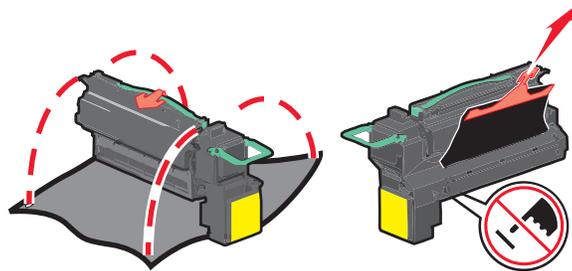
**Warning—Potential Damage:** Be careful not to touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.



5 Shake the new cartridge front-to-back and side-to-side to evenly distribute the toner.

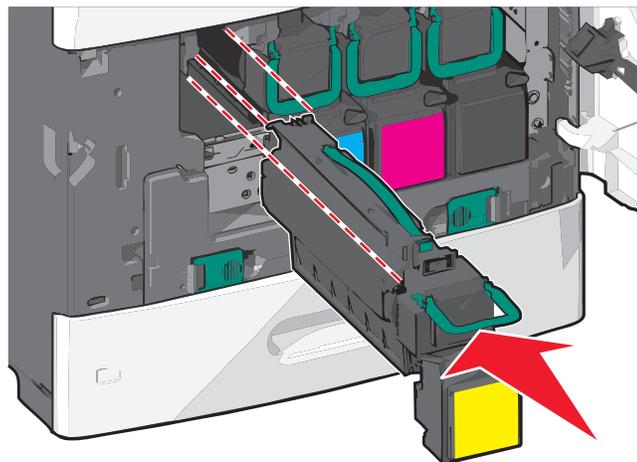


6 Remove the red packing strip from the new cartridge.

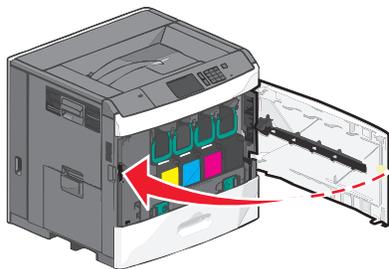


7 Insert the new cartridge into the printer, and then push the green handle back in place.

**Note:** Make sure the cartridge is fully pushed in.



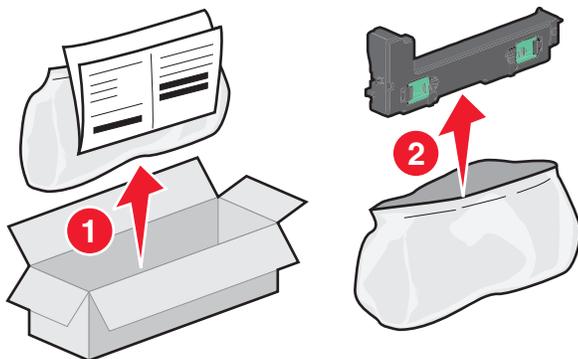
8 Close the front door.



## Replacing the waste toner bottle

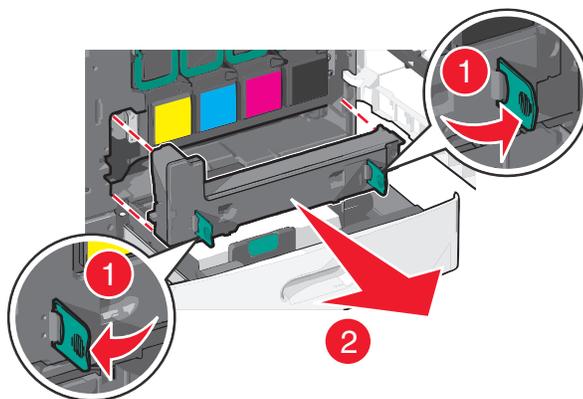
Replace the waste toner bottle when **82.xx Replace waste toner bottle** appears. The printer will not continue printing until the waste toner bottle is replaced.

1 Remove the replacement waste toner bottle from its shipping box, and then unpack it.



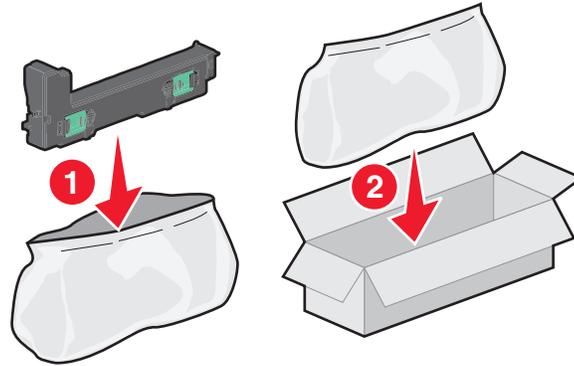
2 Open the printer front door, and then open tray 1.

3 Pull the green tabs sideways, and then grasp and pull the tabs with both hands to remove the waste toner bottle.

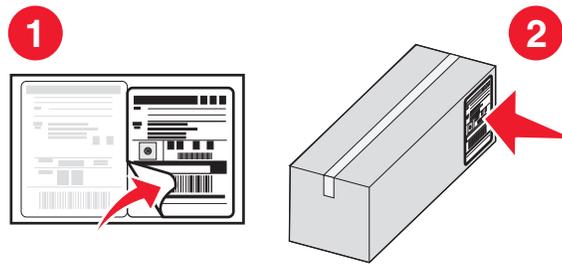


4 Place the waste toner bottle in the recycling bag.

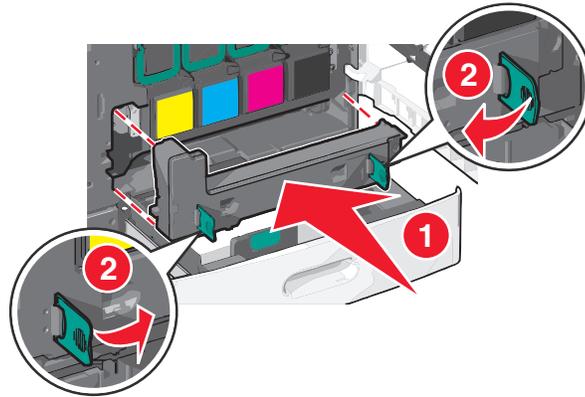
5 Place the bag into the shipping box you removed the replacement part from.



6 Peel the recycling label off, and place it on the shipping box.



7 Insert the new waste toner bottle into the printer.



8 Close tray 1, and then close the front door.

## Moving the printer

### Before moving the printer

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** The printer weight is greater than 18 kg (40 lb) and requires two or more trained personnel to move it safely.

**CAUTION—POTENTIAL INJURY:** Before moving the printer, follow these guidelines to avoid personal injury or printer damage:

- Turn the printer off using the power switch, and then unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- Disconnect all cords and cables from the printer before moving it.
- Lift the printer off of the optional drawer and set it aside instead of trying to lift the drawer and printer at the same time.

**Note:** Use the handholds located on both sides of the printer to lift it off the optional drawer.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Damage to the printer caused by improper moving is not covered by the printer warranty.

## Moving the printer to another location

The printer and options can be safely moved to another location by following these precautions:

- Any cart used to move the printer must have a surface able to support the full footprint of the printer. Any cart used to move the options must have a surface able to support the dimensions of the options.
- Keep the printer in an upright position.
- Avoid severe jarring movements.

## Shipping the printer

When shipping the printer, use the original packaging or call the place of purchase for a relocation kit.

# Administrative support

## Finding advanced networking and administrator information

This chapter covers basic administrative support tasks using the Embedded Web Server. For more advanced system support tasks, see the *Networking Guide* on the *Software and Documentation* CD and the *Embedded Web Server Administrator's Guide* on the Lexmark Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

## Using the Embedded Web Server

If the printer is installed on a network, then the Embedded Web Server is available for a range of functions including:

- Viewing a virtual display of the printer control panel
- Checking the status of the printer supplies
- Configuring printer settings
- Configuring network settings
- Viewing reports

To access the Embedded Web Server for your printer:

- 1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

**Notes:**

- If you do not know the IP address of the printer, then print a network setup page, and then locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.
- If you are using a proxy server, then temporarily disable it to load the Embedded Web Server correctly.

- 2 Press **Enter**.

## Checking the virtual display

- 1 Open an Embedded Web Server associated with your printer.

Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

- 2 Check the virtual display that appears in the top left corner of the screen.

The virtual display works as an actual display would work on a printer control panel, showing printer messages.

## Checking the status of the printer

- 1 Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

**2** Click **Device Status**.

The device status shows the following:

- Paper tray settings
- Level of toner in the print cartridge
- Percentage of life remaining in the maintenance kit
- Capacity measurements of certain printer parts

## Setting up e-mail alerts

Configure the printer to send you e-mail alerts when the supplies are getting low or when the paper needs to be changed or added, or when there is a paper jam.

**1** Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer, you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

**2** Click **Settings**.

**3** Under Other Settings, click **E-mail Alert Setup**.

**4** Select the items for notification, and type the e-mail addresses.

**5** Click **Submit**.

**Note:** For information on setting up the e-mail server, contact your system support person.

## Viewing reports

You can view some reports from the Embedded Web Server. These reports are useful for assessing the status of the printer, the network, and supplies.

To view reports from a network printer:

**1** Type the printer IP address into the address field of your Web browser.

If you do not know the IP address of the printer you can:

- View the IP address on the printer control panel in the TCP/IP section under the Networks/Ports menu.
- Print a network setup page or the menu settings pages and locate the IP address in the TCP/IP section.

**2** Click **Reports**, and then click the type of report you want to view.

# Restoring factory default settings

If you want to retain a list of the current menu settings for reference, then print a menu settings page before restoring the factory default settings.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Restoring factory defaults returns most printer settings to the original factory default settings. Exceptions include the display language, custom sizes and messages, and network/port menu settings. All downloads stored in RAM are deleted. Downloads stored in flash memory or on a printer hard disk are not affected.

From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Factory Defaults** > **Restore Now** > 

# Clearing jams

By carefully selecting papers and specialty media and loading it properly, you should be able to avoid most jams. For more information, see “Avoiding jams” on page 167. If jams do occur, follow the steps outlined in this chapter.

To resolve the jam messages, you must clear the entire paper path, and touch **Continue** to clear the message and resume printing. The printer prints a new copy of the page that jammed if Jam Recovery is set to On or Auto; however, the Auto setting does not guarantee the page will print.

**Note:** Jam recovery is set to Auto by default. The printer reprints jammed pages unless the memory required to hold the pages is needed for other printer tasks.

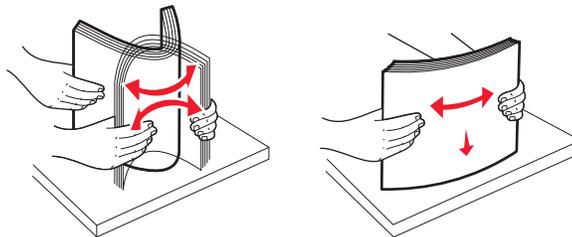
## Avoiding jams

### Paper tray recommendations

- Make sure the paper lies flat in the tray.
- Do not remove a tray while the printer is printing.
- Do not load a tray while the printer is printing. Load it prior to printing, or wait for a prompt to load it.
- Do not load too much paper. Make sure the stack height does not exceed the indicated maximum height.
- Make sure the guides in the tray or the multipurpose feeder are properly positioned and are not pressing too tightly against the paper or envelopes.
- Push the tray in firmly after loading paper.

### Paper recommendations

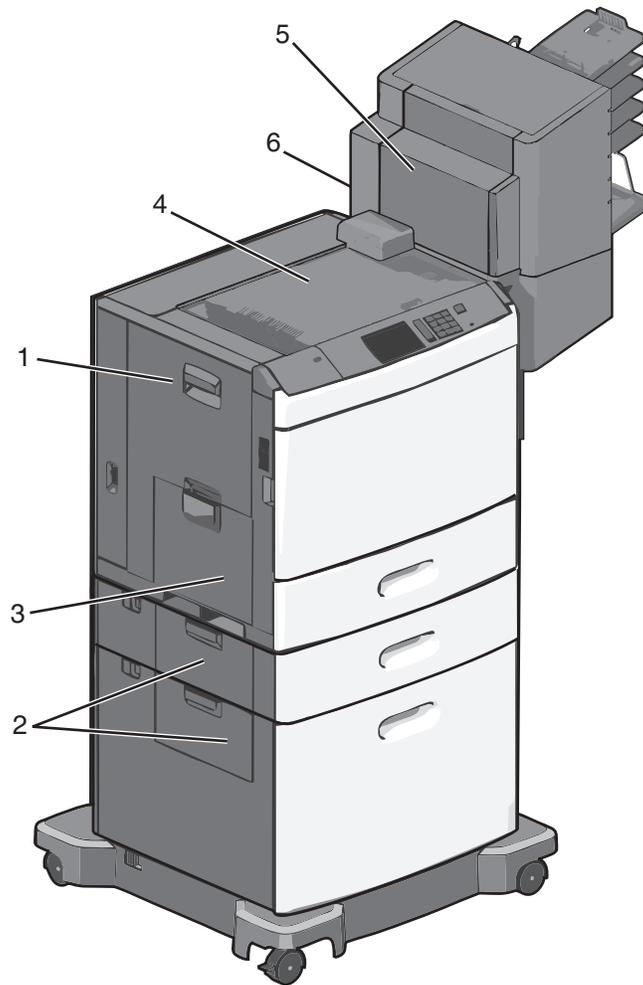
- Use only recommended paper or specialty media.
- Do not load wrinkled, creased, damp, bent, or curled paper.
- Flex and straighten paper before loading it.



- Do not use paper that has been cut or trimmed by hand.
- Do not mix paper sizes, weights, or types in the same stack.
- Make sure all sizes and types are set correctly in the printer control panel menus.
- Store paper per manufacturer recommendations.

## Understanding jam numbers and locations

When a jam occurs, a message indicating the jam location appears on the display. To resolve any paper jam message, you must clear all jammed paper from the paper path.



Area	Jam numbers	What to do
1	200-239	Open side door, and then remove the jammed paper.
2	24x	Open side door of the specified tray, and then remove the jammed paper.
3	250	Remove all paper from the multipurpose feeder, and then remove the jammed paper.
4	400-403, 460-461	Open the Horizontal Transport Unit (HTU) door, and then remove the jammed paper.
5	431-458	Push the button to slide the finisher or mailbox to the right, open the finisher or mailbox door, and then remove the jammed paper.
6	455	Open staple door, remove the staple cartridge, and then remove the jammed staple.

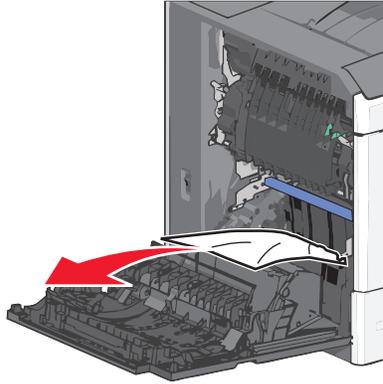
## 200 paper jam

- 1 Open the side door of the printer.



**CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

- 2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull it out.



**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

- 3 Close the side door of the printer.
- 4 From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared.**

## 201 paper jam

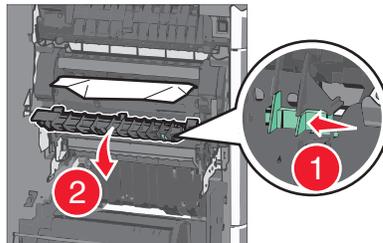
- 1 Open the side door of the printer.



**CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

- 2 Determine where the jam is located, and then remove it:

- a If paper is inside the fuser unit, then open the fuser access door.



- b Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not touch the center of the fuser unit. Doing so will damage the fuser.

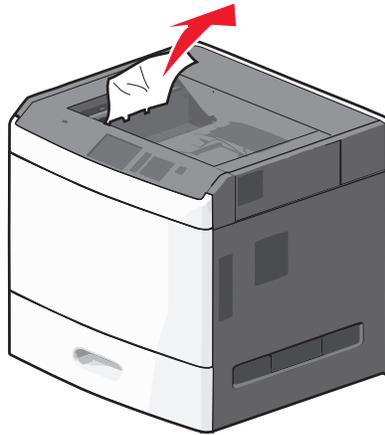
**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

- 3 Close the side door of the printer.
- 4 From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared.**

## 202–203 paper jams

If paper is visible in the standard exit bin, then firmly grasp the paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



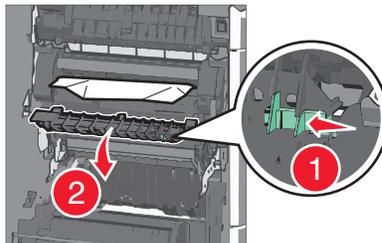
## Paper jam in the fuser

- 1 Open the side door of the printer.



**CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

- 2 If paper is visible inside the fuser unit, then open the fuser access door.



- 3 Firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Do not touch the center of the fuser unit. Doing so will damage the fuser.

**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

- 4 Close the side door.

## Paper jam under the fuser

- 1 Open the side door of the printer.



**CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

- 2 If paper is visible under the fuser, then firmly grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

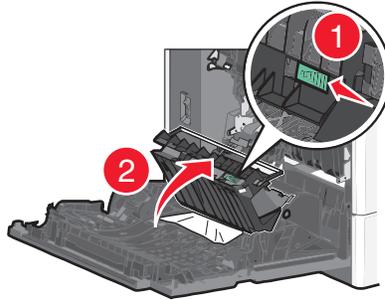
- 3 Close the side door of the printer.
- 4 From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

## 230 paper jam

- 1 Open the side door of the printer.

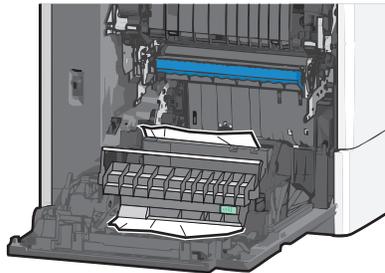
 **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

- 2 Slide the latch to open the duplex cover.



- 3 Grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull it out.

**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



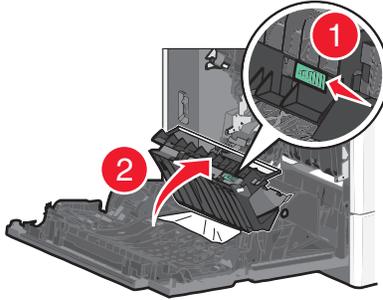
- 4 Close the duplex cover.
- 5 Close the side door of the printer.
- 6 From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

## 231–239 paper jams

- 1 Open the side door of the printer.

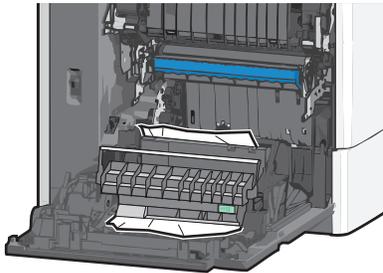
 **CAUTION—HOT SURFACE:** The inside of the printer might be hot. To reduce the risk of injury from a hot component, allow the surface to cool before touching.

- 2 Slide the latch to open the duplex cover.



- 3 Grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull it out.

**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.



- 4 Close the duplex cover.
- 5 Close the side door of the printer.
- 6 From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

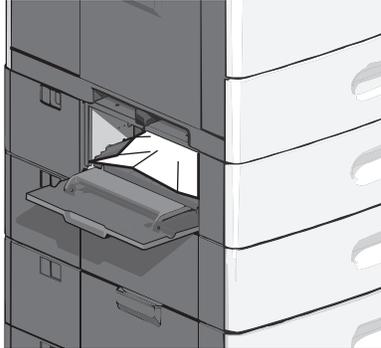
## 24x paper jam

### Paper jam in Tray 1

- 1 Open the side door.
- 2 Grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.
- 3 Close the side door.
- 4 From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

## Paper jam in the optional trays

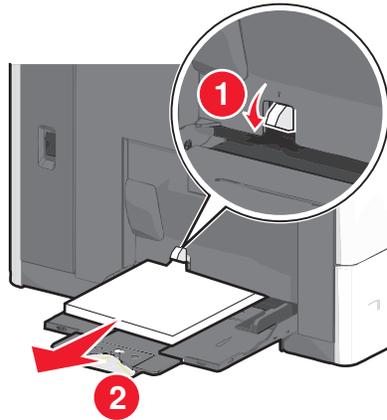
- 1 Open the side door of the specified optional tray.
- 2 Grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.



- 3 Close the side door.
- 4 From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

## 250 paper jam

- 1 Push the paper pick tab, and then remove all paper from the multipurpose feeder.



**Warning—Potential Damage:** Pulling the paper out, without pushing the paper pick tab first, may cause the paper pick tab to break.

- 2 Grasp the jammed paper on each side, and then gently pull it out.

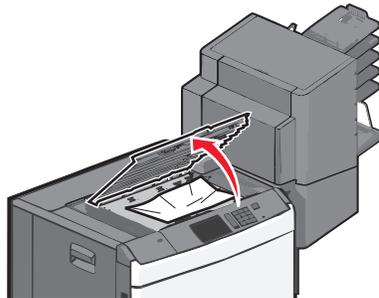


**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

- 3 Reload paper into the multipurpose feeder, and then adjust the paper guides.
- 4 From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

## 400–403 and 460–461 paper jams

- 1 Open the paper transport unit door.



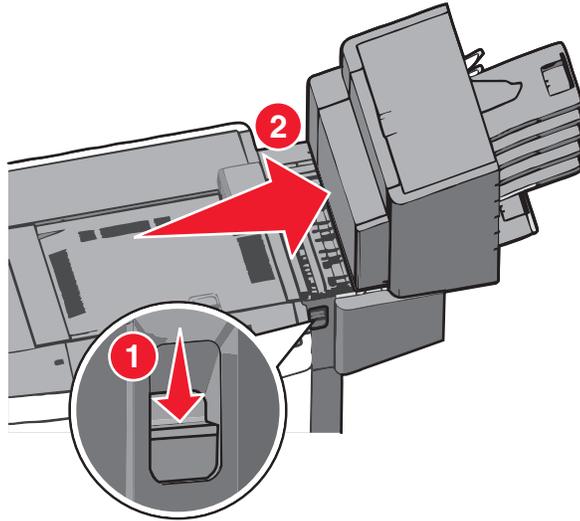
- 2 Firmly grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull it out.

**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

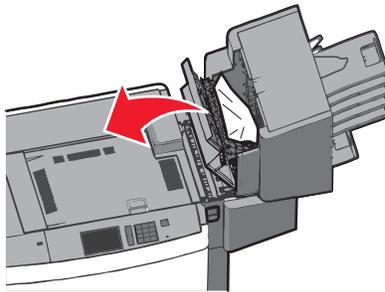
- 3 Close the paper transport unit door.
- 4 From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

## 431–454, and 456–458 paper jams

- 1 Push the button, and then slide the output finisher or mailbox to the right.



- 2 Open the finisher or mailbox access door.



- 3 Grasp the jammed paper, and then gently pull it out.

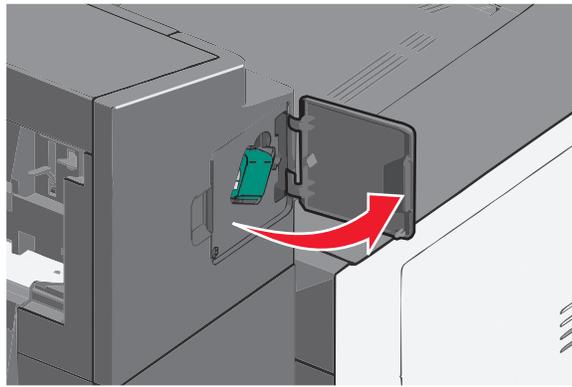
**Note:** Make sure all paper fragments are removed.

- 4 Close the finisher or mailbox access door.
- 5 Slide the finisher or mailbox to the left until it *clicks* in place.
- 6 From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared**.

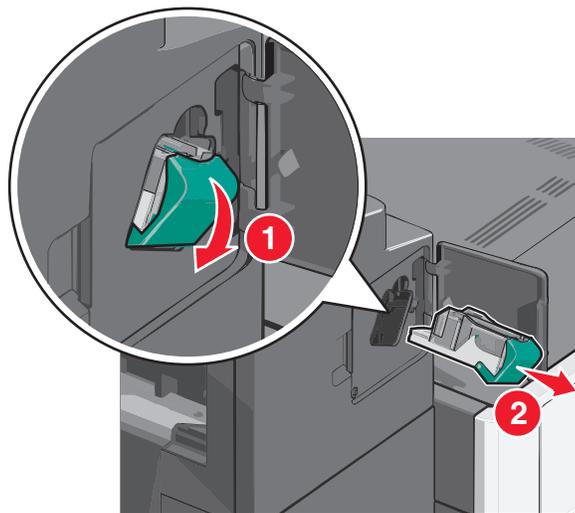
## 455 staple jam

- 1 Press the latch to open the stapler door.

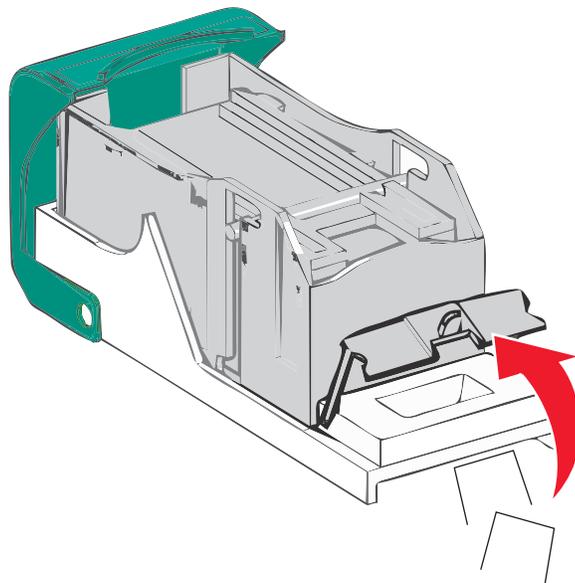
**Note:** The stapler door is located behind the finisher.



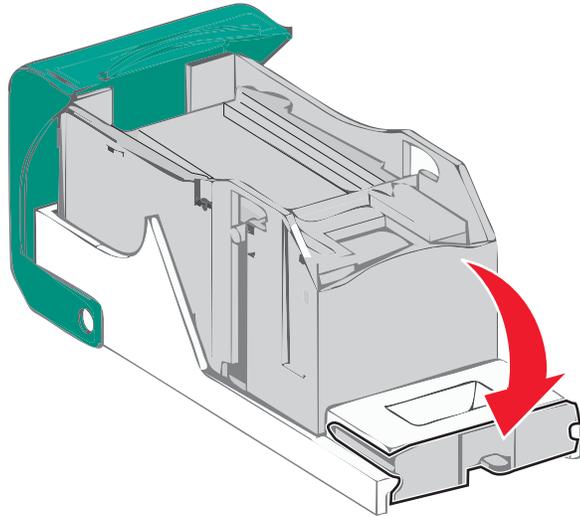
**2** Lower the latch of the staple cartridge holder, and then pull the staple cartridge holder out of the printer.



**3** Use the metal tab to lift the staple guard, and then remove any jammed or loose staples.

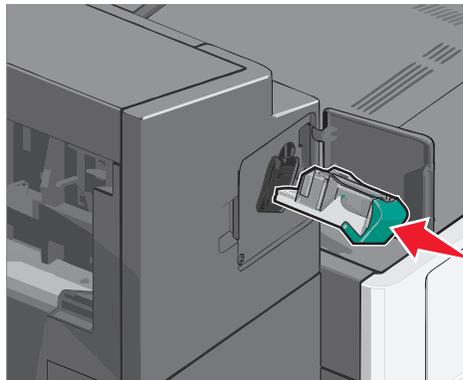


4 Close the staple guard.



5 Press down on the staple guard until it *clicks* into place.

6 Push the staple cartridge holder firmly back into the stapler unit until the staple cartridge holder *clicks* into place.



7 Close the stapler door.

8 From the printer control panel, touch **Continue, jam cleared.**

# Troubleshooting

## Checking an unresponsive printer

If your printer is not responding, make sure:

- The power cord is plugged into the printer and a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- The electrical outlet is not turned off by any switch or breaker.
- The printer is not plugged into any surge protectors, uninterrupted power supplies, or extension cords.
- Other electrical equipment plugged into the outlet is working.
- The printer is turned on.
- The printer cable is securely attached to the printer and the host computer, print server, option, or other network device.

Once you have checked each of these possibilities, turn the printer off and then back on. This often fixes the problem.

## Understanding printer messages

### Adjusting color

Wait for the process to complete.

### **An error has occurred with the Flash Drive. Please remove and reinsert the drive.**

Try one or more of the following:

- Remove and reinsert the flash drive.
- If the error message remains, the flash memory may be defective and require replacing.

### **An error has occurred with the USB drive. Please remove and reinsert drive.**

Try one or more of the following:

- Remove and reinsert the flash drive.
- If the error message remains, the flash memory may be defective and require replacement.

### **Change [src] to [custom type name]**

Incomplete printing of texts and images may be caused by incorrect paper size or type loaded in the paper tray. Try one or more of the following:

- Select the paper tray with the correct paper size or type.
- Touch **Use current [src]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.

- Touch **Paper changed, continue** to continue printing after the correct paper size and type are loaded in the tray, and are correctly specified in the printer control panel Paper menu.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the print job.

## Change [src] to [custom type name] load [orientation]

Incomplete printing of texts and images may be caused by incorrect paper size or type loaded in the paper tray. Try one or more of the following

- Select the paper tray with the correct paper size or type.
- Touch **Use current [src]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Touch **Paper changed, continue** to continue printing after the correct paper size and type are loaded in the tray, and are correctly specified in the printer control panel Paper menu.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the print job.

## Change [src] to [custom string]

Incomplete printing of texts and images may be caused by incorrect paper size or type loaded in the paper tray. Try one or more of the following:

- Select the paper tray with the correct paper size or type.
- Touch **Use current [src]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Touch **Paper changed, continue** to continue printing after the correct paper size and type are loaded in the tray, and are correctly specified in the printer control panel Paper menu.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the print job.

## Change [src] to [custom string] load [orientation]

Incomplete printing of texts and images may be caused by incorrect paper size or type loaded in the paper tray. Try one or more of the following:

- Select the paper tray with the correct paper size or type.
- Touch **Use current [src]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Touch **Paper changed, continue** to continue printing after the correct paper size and type are loaded in the tray, and are correctly specified in the printer control panel Paper menu.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the print job.

## Change [src] to [size]

Incomplete printing of texts and images may be caused by incorrect paper size or type loaded in the paper tray. Try one or more of the following:

- Select the paper tray with the correct paper size or type.
- Touch **Use current [src]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Touch **Paper changed, continue** to continue printing after the correct paper size and type are loaded in the tray, and are correctly specified in the printer control panel Paper menu.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the print job.

## Change [src] to [size] load [orientation]

Incomplete printing of texts and images may be caused by incorrect paper size or type loaded in the paper tray. Try one or more of the following:

- Select the paper tray with the correct paper size or type.
- Touch **Use current [src]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Touch **Paper changed, continue** to continue printing after the correct paper size and type are loaded in the tray, and are correctly specified in the printer control panel Paper menu.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the print job.

## Change [src] to [size] [type]

Incomplete printing of texts and images may be caused by incorrect paper size or type loaded in the paper tray. Try one or more of the following:

- Select the paper tray with the correct paper size or type.
- Touch **Use current [src]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Touch **Paper changed, continue** to continue printing after the correct paper size and type are loaded in the tray, and are correctly specified in the printer control panel Paper menu.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the print job.

## Change [src] to [size] [type] load [orientation]

Incomplete printing of texts and images may be caused by incorrect paper size or type loaded in the paper tray. Try one or more of the following:

- Select the paper tray with the correct paper size or type.
- Touch **Use current [src]** to ignore the message and print from the selected tray.
- Touch **Paper changed, continue** to continue printing after the correct paper size and type are loaded in the tray, and are correctly specified in the printer control panel Paper menu.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the print job.

## Check [src] orientation or guides

Try one or more of the following:

- Move the paper guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded.
- Make sure the paper size setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:
  - 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Size setting.
  - 2 Before sending the print job, specify the correct size setting:
    - For Windows users, specify the paper size from Print Properties.
    - For Macintosh users, specify the paper size from the Page Setup dialog.

## Close paper transport cover

Close the paper transport unit cover or door.

## Close left side door

Close the left side door of the printer.

## Close [tray] door

Close the specified tray door.

## Close finisher side door

Close the side door of the finisher.

## Close finisher top cover

Close the top cover of the finisher.

## Close front door

Close the front door of the printer.

## Disk corrupted

The printer attempted a hard disk recovery on a corrupted hard disk, and the hard disk cannot be repaired. The hard disk must be reformatted.

Touch **Format disk** to reformat the printer hard disk and clear the message.

**Note:** Formatting deletes all the files stored on the printer hard disk.

## Disk near full. Securely clearing disk space.

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data stored on the printer hard disk.
- Install a hard disk with higher capacity.

## Disk problem

The printer hard disk must be reformatted.

Touch **Format disk** to reformat the printer hard disk and clear the message.

**Note:** Formatting deletes all the files stored on the printer hard disk.

## Empty the hole punch box

- 1 Empty the hole punch box.

For instructions on emptying the hole punch box, from the printer control panel touch **More Information**.

- 2 Reinsert the hole punch box into the finisher, and then touch **Continue** to clear the message.

## Error reading USB drive. Remove drive.

An unsupported USB device has been inserted. Remove the USB device, and then install a supported one.

## Insert staple cartridge

Try one or more of the following:

- Insert a staple cartridge.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and print without using the staple finisher.

## Insert Tray [x]

Insert the specified tray into the printer.

## Insert the hole punch box

Insert the hole punch box into the finisher, and then touch **Continue** to clear the message.

## Install bin [x]

Try one or more of the following:

- Install the specified bin:
  - 1 Turn the printer off.
  - 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
  - 3 Install the specified bin.
  - 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
  - 5 Turn the printer back on.
- Cancel the print job.

## Install envelope feeder

Try one or more of the following:

- Install the envelope feeder:
  - 1 Turn the printer off.
  - 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
  - 3 Install the envelope feeder.

- 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
  - 5 Turn the printer back on.
- Cancel the print job.

## Install Tray [x]

Try one or more of the following:

- Install the specified tray:
  - 1 Turn the printer off.
  - 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
  - 3 Install the specified tray.
  - 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
  - 5 Turn the printer back on.
- Cancel the print job.

## Load [src] with [custom type name]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the tray or feeder.
- Touch **Paper loaded, continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, it prints from the default paper source.
- Cancel the print job.

## Load [src] with [custom string]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the tray or feeder.
- Touch **Paper loaded, continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, it prints from the default paper source.
- Cancel the print job.

## Load [src] with [size]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the tray or feeder.
- Touch **Paper loaded, continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, it feeds from the default paper source.
- Cancel the print job.

## Load [src] with [type] [size]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the tray or feeder.
- Touch **Paper loaded, continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, it feeds from the default paper source.

- Cancel the print job.

## Load Manual Feeder with [custom type name]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the multipurpose feeder.
- Touch **Prompt each page, paper loaded** to clear the message and continue printing.

If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, then it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, then it prints from the default paper source.

- Cancel the print job.

## Load Manual Feeder with [custom string]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the multipurpose feeder.
- Touch **Prompt each page, paper loaded** to clear the message and continue printing.

If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, then it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, then it prints from the default paper source.

- Cancel the print job.

## Load Manual Feeder with [size]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the multipurpose feeder.
- Touch **Prompt each page, paper loaded** to clear the message and continue printing.

If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, then it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, then it prints from the default paper source.

- Cancel the print job.

## Load Manual Feeder with [type] [size]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the specified paper in the multipurpose feeder.
- Touch **Prompt each page, paper loaded** to clear the message and continue printing.

If the printer finds a tray that has the correct paper type and size, then it feeds from that tray. If the printer cannot find a tray with the correct paper type and size, then it prints from the default paper source.

- Cancel the print job.

## Load staples

Try one or more of the following:

- Replace the specified staple cartridge in the finisher.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Touch **Cancel job** to cancel the print job.

## Paper changes needed

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Use current supplies** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Cancel the current print job.

## Reattach bin [x]

Try one or more of the following:

- Turn the printer off and then back on.
- Reattach the specified bin:
  - 1 Turn the printer off.
  - 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
  - 3 Remove the specified bin.
  - 4 Reattach the bin.
  - 5 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
  - 6 Turn the printer back on.
- Remove the specified bin:
  - 1 Turn the printer off.
  - 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
  - 3 Remove the specified bin.
  - 4 Contact Customer Support.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and print without using the specified bin.

## Reattach bin [x] – [y]

Try one or more of the following:

- Turn the printer off and then back on.
- Reattach the specified bins:
  - 1 Turn the printer off.
  - 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
  - 3 Remove the specified bins.
  - 4 Reattach the bins.
  - 5 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
  - 6 Turn the printer back on.

- Remove the specified bins:
  - 1 Turn the printer off.
  - 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
  - 3 Remove the specified bins.
  - 4 Contact Customer Support.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and print without using the specified bins.

## Remove paper from standard output bin

Remove the stack of paper from the standard exit bin.

## Remove paper from bin [x]

Remove the paper from the specified bin. The printer automatically senses paper removal and resumes printing. If removing the paper does not clear the message, then touch **Continue**.

## Remove paper from all bins

Output bins have reached their capacity. Remove paper from all output bins to clear the message and continue printing.

## Remove paper from [linked bin set name]

Remove the paper from the specified bin. The printer automatically senses paper removal and resumes printing. If removing the paper does not clear the message, then touch **Continue**.

## Restore Held Jobs?

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to restore all held jobs stored on the printer hard disk.
- Touch **Do not restore** if you do not want any print jobs to be restored.

## Remove packaging material, [area name]

Remove any remaining packaging material from the specified location.

## Slide finisher to the left

Slide the mailbox or finisher to the left until it *clicks* into place.

## Some held jobs were not restored

Touch **Continue** to delete the specified job.

**Note:** Held jobs that are not restored stay on the hard disk and are inaccessible.

## Supply needed to complete job

A supply needed to complete the job is missing. Touch **Cancel** to clear the message.

## Unsupported disk

An unsupported disk has been inserted. Remove the unsupported disk, and then install a supported one.

## 31.xx Missing or defective [color] cartridge

Try one or more of the following:

- 1 Remove and reinstall the specified print cartridge.  
For instructions on removing a print cartridge, touch **More Information**.
- 2 Touch **Continue** to clear the message.  
**Note:** If the message is not cleared, then replace the defective print cartridge.

## 32.xx [color] cartridge part number unsupported by device

- 1 Remove the unsupported print cartridge, and then install a supported one.  
For instructions on removing a print cartridge, touch **More Information**.
- 2 Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

## 34 Incorrect paper size, open [src]

Try one or more of the following:

- Load the appropriate paper or specialty media in the proper tray.
- Confirm that the wheel on tray 1 is set to the paper size loaded in the tray. Make sure this size is the size you are trying to print.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and print using a different tray.
- Check length and width guides of the tray and make sure the paper is properly loaded in the tray.
- Make sure the Print Properties or Print dialog settings have the correct paper size and type.
- Check that the paper size is correctly set. For example, if the MP Feeder Size is set to Universal, make sure the paper is large enough for the data being printed.
- Cancel the print job.

## 35 Insufficient memory to support Resource Save feature

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to disable Resource Save and continue printing.
- To enable Resource Save after receiving this message, make sure the link buffers are set to Auto, and then exit the menus to activate the link buffer changes. When **Ready** appears, enable Resource Save.
- Install additional memory.

## 37 Insufficient memory to collate job

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to print the portion of the job already stored and begin collating the rest of the print job.
- Cancel the current print job.

## 37 Insufficient memory for Flash Memory Defragment operation

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to stop the defragment operation and continue printing.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data in printer memory.
- Install additional printer memory.

## 37 Insufficient memory, some Held Jobs were deleted

The printer deleted some held jobs in order to process current jobs.

Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

## 37 Insufficient memory, some held jobs will not be restored

The printer was unable to restore some or all of the confidential or held jobs on the printer hard disk.

Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

## 38 Memory full

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.
- Cancel the current print job.
- Install additional printer memory.

## 39 Complex page, some data may not have printed

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Cancel the current print job.
- Install additional printer memory.

## 40 [color] invalid refill, change cartridge

Replace the specified cartridge to continue printing.

## 51 Defective flash detected

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Cancel the current print job.

## 52 Not enough free space in flash memory for resources

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.  
Downloaded fonts and macros not previously stored in flash memory are deleted.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data stored in flash memory.
- Upgrade to a larger capacity flash memory card.

## 53 Unformatted flash detected

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to stop the defragment operation and continue printing.
- Format the flash memory. If the error message remains, the flash memory may be defective and require replacing.

## 54 Serial option [x] error

Try one or more of the following:

- Check that the serial cable is connected properly and is the correct one for the serial port.
- Check that the serial interface parameters (protocol, baud, parity, and data bits) are set correctly on the printer and on the host computer.
- Touch **Continue** to continue printing.
- Turn the printer power off and then back on to reset the printer.

## 54 Standard network software error

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to continue printing.
- Turn the printer off and then back on to reset the printer.
- Upgrade (flash) the network firmware in the printer or print server.

## 54 Network [x] software error

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to continue printing.
- Turn the printer off, wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on.
- Upgrade (flash) the network firmware in the printer.

## 55 Unsupported option in slot [x]

- 1 Turn the printer off.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- 3 Remove the unsupported option card from the printer system board, and then replace it with a supported card.
- 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- 5 Turn the printer back on.

## 56 Parallel port [x] disabled

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.  
The printer discards any data received through the parallel port.
- Make sure the Parallel Buffer menu item is not set to Disabled.

## 56 Serial port [x] disabled

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.  
The printer discards any data received through the serial port.
- Make sure the Serial Buffer menu is not set to Disabled.

## 56 Standard USB port disabled

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.  
The printer discards any data received through the USB port.
- Make sure the USB Buffer menu item is not set to Disabled.

## 56 Standard parallel port disabled

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.  
The printer discards any data received through the parallel port.
- Make sure the Parallel Buffer menu item is not set to Disabled.

## 56 USB port [x] disabled

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message.  
The printer discards any data received through the USB port.
- Make sure the USB Buffer menu is not set to Disabled.

## 57 Configuration change, some held jobs were not restored

Something has changed in the printer to invalidate the held jobs. Possible changes include:

- The printer firmware has been updated.
- Paper input options needed for the print job were removed.
- The print job was created using data from a device in the USB port and the device is no longer in the USB port.
- The printer hard disk contains print jobs that were stored while installed in a different printer model.

Touch **Continue** to clear the message.

## 58 Input config error

- 1 Turn the printer off.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- 3 Check if all tray configurations are correct. Remove unnecessary trays if needed.
- 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- 5 Turn the printer back on.

## 58 Too many bins attached

- 1 Turn the printer off.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- 3 Remove the additional bins.
- 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- 5 Turn the printer back on.

## 58 Too many disks installed

- 1 Turn the printer off.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- 3 Remove the excess disks.
- 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded electrical outlet.
- 5 Turn the printer back on.

## 58 Too many flash options installed

- 1 Turn the printer off.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- 3 Remove the excess flash memory.
- 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded outlet.
- 5 Turn the printer back on.

## 58 Too many trays attached

- 1 Turn the printer off.
- 2 Unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.
- 3 Remove the additional trays.
- 4 Connect the power cord to a properly grounded outlet.
- 5 Turn the printer back on.

## 59 Incompatible output bin [x]

Try one or more of the following:

- Remove the specified output bin.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing without using the specified output bin.

## 61 Remove defective disk

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.
- Install a different printer hard disk before performing any operations that require a printer hard disk.

## 62 Disk full

Try one or more of the following:

- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue processing.
- Delete fonts, macros, and other data stored on the printer hard disk.
- Install a printer hard disk with larger capacity.

## 80.xx Fuser near life warning

- 1 Order a replacement fuser immediately.
- 2 When print quality is reduced, install the new fuser, following the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.
- 3 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

## 80.xx Fuser life warning

- Order a replacement fuser immediately. When print quality is reduced, install the new fuser, following the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.
- Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

## 80.xx Replace fuser

Replace the fuser using the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

## 80.xx Fuser missing

- 1 Replace the fuser, following the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.
- 2 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

## 82.xx Waste toner bottle nearly full

Order a replacement waste toner bottle immediately.

- 1 Replace the waste toner bottle.  
For instructions on installing the waste toner bottle, from the printer control panel touch **More Information**.
- 2 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

## 82.xx Replace waste toner bottle

- 1 Replace the waste toner bottle.  
For instructions on replacing the waste toner bottle, from the printer control panel touch **More Information**.
- 2 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

## 82.xx Waste toner bottle missing

Reinsert the waste toner bottle into the printer.

## 83.xx Transfer module life warning

- 1 Replace the transfer module, following the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.
- 2 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

## 83.xx Transfer module missing

Insert the transfer module into the printer.

## 83.xx Replace transfer module

Replace the transfer module, following the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

## 88.xx [color] cartridge nearly low

Order a replacement for the specified print cartridge.

## 88.xx [color] cartridge low

- 1 Remove the specified cartridge.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Be careful not to touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.

- 2 Firmly shake the cartridge side-to-side and front-to-back several times to redistribute the toner.
- 3 Reinsert the cartridge, and then touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

### Notes:

- Repeat this procedure multiple times until the print remains faded. When the print remains faded, replace the cartridge.
- Have a new cartridge available when the current one no longer prints satisfactorily.

## 88.xx [Color] cartridge very low

The specified print cartridge is very low.

- 1 For instructions on replacing a print cartridge, from the printer control panel touch **More Information**.
- 2 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

## 88.xx [Color] cartridge critically low

The specified print cartridge is critically low.

- 1 For instructions on replacing a print cartridge, from the printer control panel touch **More Information**.
- 2 Touch **Continue** to clear the message and continue printing.

## 1565 Emulation error, load emulation option

The printer automatically clears the message in 30 seconds and then disables the download emulator on the firmware card.

To fix this, download the correct download emulator version from the Lexmark Web site at [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com).

# Solving printing problems

## Multiple-language PDF files do not print

The PDF files may contain unavailable fonts.

- 1 Open the document you want to print in Adobe Acrobat.
- 2 Click the printer icon > **Advanced** > **Print as image** > **OK** > **OK**.

## Printer control panel display is blank or displays only diamonds

The printer self test failed. Turn the printer off, wait about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer back on.

If **Performing Self Test** and **Ready** do not appear, turn the printer off and contact Customer Support.

## Error message about reading USB drive appears

Make sure the USB drive is supported. For information regarding tested and approved USB flash memory devices, see "Printing from a flash drive" on page 84.

## Print jobs do not print

Try one or more of the following:

### MAKE SURE THE PRINTER IS READY TO PRINT

Make sure **Ready** appears on the display before sending a print job.

### CHECK IF THE STANDARD EXIT BIN IS FULL

Remove the paper stack from the standard exit bin.

### CHECK IF THE PAPER TRAY IS EMPTY

Load paper in the tray.

### MAKE SURE THE CORRECT PRINTER SOFTWARE IS INSTALLED

- Verify that you are using the correct printer software.
- If the printer is connected to your computer through a USB port, then make sure you are running a supported operating system and using a compatible printer software.

### MAKE SURE THE INTERNAL PRINT SERVER IS WORKING PROPERLY

- Make sure the internal print server is properly installed and that the printer is connected to the network.
- Print a network setup page and check that the status shows **Connected**. If the status is **Not Connected**, then check the network cables, and then try printing the network setup page again. Contact your system support person to make sure the network is functioning correctly.

The printer software is available on the Lexmark Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

## **MAKE SURE YOU ARE USING A RECOMMENDED USB, SERIAL, OR ETHERNET CABLE**

For more information, visit the Lexmark Web site at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

## **MAKE SURE PRINTER CABLES ARE SECURELY CONNECTED**

Check the cable connections to the printer and print server to make sure they are secure.

For more information, see the setup documentation that came with the printer.

## **Confidential and other held jobs do not print**

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

### **PARTIAL JOB, NO JOB, OR BLANK PAGE PRINTS**

The print job may contain a formatting error or invalid data.

- Delete the print job, and then print it again.
- For PDF documents, recreate the PDF and then print it again.

If you are printing from the Internet, then the printer may be reading multiple job titles as duplicates and deleting all jobs except the first one.

- For Windows users, open Print Properties. From the Print and Hold dialog, select the "Keep duplicate documents" check box under the User name text box before entering a PIN number.
- For Macintosh users, save each print job, naming each job differently, and then send the individual jobs to the printer.

### **MAKE SURE THE PRINTER HAS SUFFICIENT MEMORY**

Free up additional printer memory by scrolling through the list of held jobs and deleting some of them.

## **Print job takes longer than expected**

Try one or more of the following:

### **REDUCE THE COMPLEXITY OF THE PRINT JOB**

Eliminate the number and size of fonts, the number and complexity of images, and the number of pages in the print job.

### **TURN OFF THE PAGE PROTECT SETTING**

From the home screen, navigate to:

 > **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Print Recovery** > **Page Protect** > **Off** > 

### **CHANGE THE ENVIRONMENTAL SETTINGS**

When using Eco-Mode or Quiet Mode settings, you may notice a reduction in performance.

## Job prints from the wrong tray or on the wrong paper

### CHECK THE PAPER TYPE SETTING

Make sure the paper type setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type setting.
- 2 Before sending the job to print, specify the correct type setting:
  - For Windows users, specify the type from Print Properties.
  - For Macintosh users, specify the type from the Print dialog.

### Incorrect characters print

- Make sure the printer is not in Hex Trace mode. If **Ready Hex** appears on the display, you must exit Hex Trace mode before you can print your job. Turn the printer off and back on to exit Hex Trace mode.
- Make sure the SmartSwitch settings are set to On in the Network and USB menus.

### Tray linking does not work

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

#### LOAD THE SAME SIZE AND TYPE OF PAPER

- Load the same size and type of paper in each tray to be linked.
- Move the paper guides to the correct positions for the paper size loaded in each tray.

#### USE THE SAME PAPER SIZE AND PAPER TYPE SETTINGS

- Print a menu settings page and compare the settings for each tray.
- If necessary, adjust the settings from the Paper Size/Type menu.

**Note:** The standard 550-sheet tray and the multipurpose feeder do not automatically sense the paper size. You must set the size from the Paper Size/Type menu.

### Large jobs do not collate

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

#### MAKE SURE COLLATE IS SET TO ON

From the Finishing menu or Print Properties, set Collate to On.

**Note:** Setting Collate to Off in the software overrides the setting in the Finishing menu.

#### REDUCE THE COMPLEXITY OF THE PRINT JOB

Reduce the complexity of the print job by eliminating the number and size of fonts, the number and complexity of images, and the number of pages in the job.

## **MAKE SURE THE PRINTER HAS ENOUGH MEMORY**

Add printer memory or an optional hard disk.

## **Unexpected page breaks**

### **INCREASE THE PRINT TIMEOUT VALUE**

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:  
 > **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Timeouts** > **Print Timeout**
- 2 Increase the Print Timeout value, and then touch .

## **Solving option problems**

### **Option does not operate correctly or quits after it is installed**

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

#### **RESET THE PRINTER**

Turn the printer off, wait for about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer on.

#### **CHECK TO SEE IF THE OPTION IS CONNECTED TO THE PRINTER**

- 1 Turn the printer off.
- 2 Unplug the printer.
- 3 Check the connection between the option and the printer.

#### **MAKE SURE THE OPTION IS INSTALLED**

Print a menu settings page and check to see if the option is listed in the Installed Options list. If the option is not listed, reinstall it.

#### **MAKE SURE THE OPTION IS AVAILABLE IN THE PRINTER DRIVER**

It may be necessary to manually add the option in the printer driver to make it available for print jobs. For more information, see "Updating available options in the printer driver" on page 38.

#### **MAKE SURE THE OPTION IS SELECTED**

From the program you are using, select the option. Mac OS 9 users should make sure the printer is set up in the Chooser.

## Paper tray problems

Try one or more of the following:

### MAKE SURE THE PAPER IS LOADED CORRECTLY

- 1 Open the paper tray.
- 2 Check for paper jams or misfeeds.
- 3 Make sure the paper guides are aligned against the edges of the paper.
- 4 Make sure the paper tray closes properly.

### RESET THE PRINTER

Turn the printer off, wait about 10 seconds, and then turn the printer on.

### MAKE SURE THE PAPER TRAY IS INSTALLED CORRECTLY

If the paper tray is listed on the menu settings page, but paper jams when it enters or exits the tray, then it may not be properly installed. Reinstall the paper tray. For more information, see the hardware setup documentation that came with the paper tray, or go to <http://support.lexmark.com> to view the paper tray instruction sheet.

## 2,000-sheet drawer problems

### CHECK THE DRAWER CONNECTION

Make sure the 2,000-sheet drawer is properly connected to the printer.

### LOAD PAPER

If the tray is empty, then load paper in the tray or feeder

### CLEAR ANY JAMS

Open the side door of the tray or feeder, and then remove any jammed paper.

### AVOID PAPER JAMS

- Flex the paper.
- Make sure the drawer is properly installed.
- Make sure paper is loaded correctly.
- Make sure the paper stack you load does not exceed the maximum stack height indicated in the tray.
- Make sure the paper or specialty media meets specifications and is not damaged.
- Make sure the guides are positioned correctly for the paper size loaded.

## Memory card

Make sure the memory card is securely connected to the printer system board.

## Cannot detect flash memory card

Make sure the flash memory card is securely connected to the printer system board.

## Cannot detect printer hard disk

Make sure the printer hard disk is securely connected to the printer system board.

## Internal Solutions Port does not operate correctly

Try one or more of the following:

### CHECK THE INTERNAL SOLUTIONS PORT (ISP) CONNECTIONS

Make sure the ISP is securely connected to the printer system board.

### CHECK THE CABLE

Make sure you are using the correct cable and that it is securely connected to the Internal Solutions (ISP) port.

### MAKE SURE THE NETWORK SOFTWARE IS CONFIGURED CORRECTLY

For information on installing the network printing software, see the *Networking Guide* on the *Software and Documentation CD*.

## Internal print server does not operate correctly

Try one or more of the following:

### CHECK THE PRINT SERVER CONNECTIONS

- Make sure the internal print server is attached securely to the printer system board.
- Make sure you are using the correct cable and that it is securely connected.

### MAKE SURE THE NETWORK SOFTWARE IS CONFIGURED CORRECTLY

For more information on installing the network printing software, do the following:

- 1 Open the *Software and Documentation CD*.
- 2 Click **Additional**.
- 3 Under Publications on this CD, select **Networking Guide**.

## USB/parallel interface card does not operate correctly

### CHECK THE USB/PARALLEL INTERFACE CARD CONNECTION

Make sure the USB/parallel interface card is securely connected to the printer system board.

## CHECK THE CABLE

Make sure you are using the correct cable and that it is securely connected.

# Solving paper feed problems

## Paper frequently jams

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

### CHECK THE PAPER

Use recommended paper and specialty media. For more information, see the chapter about paper and specialty media guidelines.

### MAKE SURE THERE IS NOT TOO MUCH PAPER IN THE PAPER TRAY

Make sure the stack of paper you load does not exceed the maximum stack height indicated in the tray or on the multipurpose feeder.

### CHECK THE PAPER GUIDES

Move the guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded.

### THE PAPER MAY HAVE ABSORBED MOISTURE DUE TO HIGH HUMIDITY

- Load paper from a fresh package.
- Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.

## Paper jam message remains after jam is cleared

### CHECK THE PAPER PATH

The paper path is not clear. Clear jammed paper from the entire paper path, and then touch **Continue**.

## Jammed pages are not reprinted

### TURN ON JAM RECOVERY

- 1 From the home screen, navigate to:  
 > **Settings** > **General Settings** > **Print Recovery**
- 2 Touch the arrows next to **Jam Recovery** until **On** or **Auto** appears.
- 3 Touch .

# Solving print quality problems

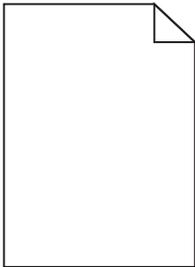
If the solutions here do not correct the problem, contact customer support. You may have a printer part that requires adjustment or replacement.

## Isolating print quality problems

Print the print quality test pages to help isolate print quality problems.

- 1 Turn the printer off.
- 2 Load letter- or A4-size paper in the tray or feeder.
- 3 Hold down **2<sup>ABC</sup>** and **6<sup>MNO</sup>** while turning the printer on.
- 4 Release the buttons when the screen with the progress bar appears.  
The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears.
- 5 Touch **Print Quality Pages > Print Quality Pages**.  
The print quality test pages print.
- 6 Touch **Back > Exit Config Menu**.

## Printer is printing blank pages



Try one or more of the following:

### **MAKE SURE THERE IS NO PACKING MATERIAL LEFT ON THE PRINT CARTRIDGE**

Remove the print cartridge and make sure the packing material is properly removed. Reinstall the print cartridge.

### **MAKE SURE THE PRINT CARTRIDGE IS NOT LOW ON TONER**

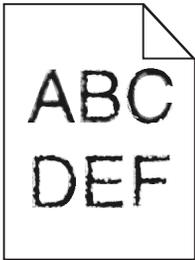
When **88.xx [color] cartridge low** appears, make sure that toner is distributed evenly among all four print cartridges or whichever color has the shadow images:

- 1 Remove the print cartridge.  
**Warning—Potential Damage:** Be careful not to touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.
- 2 Firmly shake the cartridge side-to-side and front-to-back several times to redistribute the toner.
- 3 Reinsert the print cartridge.

**Note:** If print quality does not improve, replace the print cartridge of the color that is not printing.

If the problem continues, the printer may need to be serviced. For more information, contact customer support.

## Characters have jagged or uneven edges



If you are using downloaded fonts, verify that the fonts are supported by the printer, the host computer, and the software program.

## Colors are not aligned properly



Color has shifted outside of the appropriate area or has been superimposed over another color area. Try one or more of the following:

### PERFORM COLOR ADJUST

From the printer control panel Quality menu, perform Color Adjust.

### REINSTALL THE PRINT CARTRIDGES

Remove and reinstall all four print cartridges.

### ADJUST THE COLOR ALIGNMENT

- 1 Turn the printer off.
- 2 Load letter- or A4-size paper in the tray.
- 3 Hold down **2<sub>ABC</sub>** and **6<sub>MNO</sub>** while turning the printer on.
- 4 Release the buttons when the screen with the progress bar appears.  
The printer performs a power-on sequence, and then the Configuration menu appears.
- 5 Touch **Color Alignment > Print Alignment Page**.  
The color alignment pages print.
- 6 Touch **Color Alignment**.

- 7 On the printed alignment pages, find the straightest of the 20 lines beside the letter A.
- 8 From the printer control panel, touch the arrows to select that number.
- 9 Repeat steps 7 and 8 to align sets B through L.
- 10 Touch **Back** > **Exit Config Menu**.

**Note:** If necessary, adjust the color alignment again.

## Clipped images

Try one or more of the following:

### CHECK THE GUIDES

Move the width and length guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded.

### CHECK THE PAPER SIZE SETTING

Make sure the paper size setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Size setting.
- 2 Before sending the job to print, specify the correct size setting:
  - For Windows users, specify the size from Print Properties.
  - For Macintosh users, specify the size from the Page Setup dialog.

## Shadow images appear on prints



Try one or more of the following:

### CHECK THE PAPER TYPE AND WEIGHT SETTINGS

Make sure the paper type and weight settings match the paper loaded in the tray or feeder:

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type and Paper Weight settings.
- 2 Before sending the print job, specify the correct paper type setting:
  - For Windows users, specify the paper type from Print Properties.
  - For Macintosh users, specify the paper type from the Print dialog.

## MAKE SURE THE PRINT CARTRIDGE IS NOT LOW ON TONER

When **88.xx [color] cartridge low** appears, make sure that toner is distributed evenly among all four print cartridges or whichever color has the shadow images.

**1** Remove the print cartridge.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Be careful not to touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.

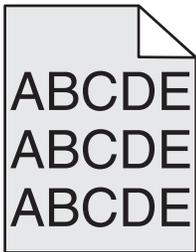
**2** Firmly shake the cartridge side-to-side and front-to-back several times to redistribute the toner.

**3** Reinsert the print cartridge.

**Note:** If print quality does not improve, replace the print cartridge of the color that is giving a shadow.

If the problem continues, the printer may need to be serviced. For more information, contact customer support.

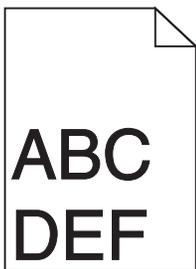
## Gray background on prints



## MAKE SURE THERE IS NO WORN OR DEFECTIVE PRINT CARTRIDGE

Replace the worn or defective print cartridge.

## Incorrect margins



These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

## CHECK THE PAPER GUIDES

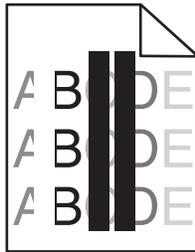
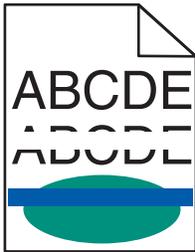
Move the guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded.

## CHECK THE PAPER SIZE SETTING

Make sure the paper size setting matches the paper loaded in the tray:

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Size setting.
- 2 Before sending the job to print, specify the correct size setting:
  - For Windows users, specify the size from Print Properties.
  - For Macintosh users, specify the size from the Page Setup dialog.

## Light colored line, white line, or incorrectly colored line appears on prints



Try one or more of the following:

### MAKE SURE THERE IS NO DEFECTIVE PRINT CARTRIDGE

Replace the defective print cartridge.

### MAKE SURE THE TRANSFER BELT IS NOT DEFECTIVE

Replace the defective transfer belt. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

## Paper curl

Try one or more of the following:

### CHECK THE PAPER TYPE AND WEIGHT SETTINGS

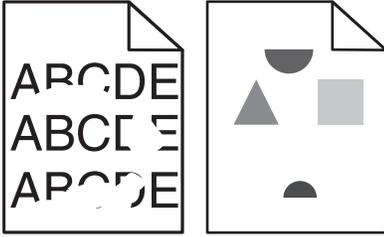
Make sure the paper type and weight settings match the paper loaded in the tray or feeder:

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type and Paper Weight settings.
- 2 Before sending the print job, specify the correct paper type setting:
  - For Windows users, specify the paper type from Print Properties.
  - For Macintosh users, specify the paper type from the Print dialog.

### LOAD PAPER FROM A FRESH PACKAGE

Paper absorbs moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.

## Print irregularities



Try one or more of the following:

### **LOAD PAPER FROM A FRESH PACKAGE**

The paper may have absorbed moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.

### **CHECK THE PAPER TYPE AND WEIGHT SETTINGS**

Make sure the paper type and weight settings match the paper loaded in the tray or feeder:

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type and Paper Weight settings.
- 2 Before sending the print job, specify the correct paper type setting:
  - For Windows users, specify the paper type from Print Properties.
  - For Macintosh users, specify the paper type from the Print dialog.

### **AVOID TEXTURED PAPER WITH ROUGH FINISHES**

### **MAKE SURE THERE IS NO DEFECTIVE PRINT CARTRIDGE**

Replace the worn or defective print cartridge.

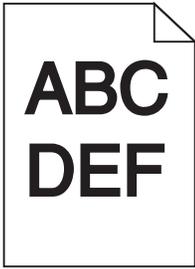
### **MAKE SURE THE TRANSFER BELT IS NOT DEFECTIVE**

Replace the defective transfer belt. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

### **MAKE SURE THE FUSER IS NOT DEFECTIVE**

Replace the defective fuser. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

## Print is too dark



Try one or more of the following:

### **LOAD PAPER FROM A FRESH PACKAGE**

The paper may have absorbed moisture due to high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.

### **AVOID TEXTURED PAPER WITH ROUGH FINISHES**

### **CHECK THE PAPER TYPE SETTING**

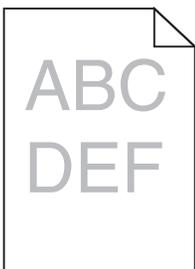
Make sure the Paper Type setting matches the paper loaded in the tray or feeder:

- From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type setting.
- For Windows users, check this setting from Print Properties.
- For Macintosh users, check this setting from the Print dialog.

### **MAKE SURE THERE IS NO DEFECTIVE PRINT CARTRIDGE**

Replace the defective print cartridge.

## Print is too light



Try one or more of the following:

### **LOAD PAPER FROM A FRESH PACKAGE**

The paper may have absorbed moisture from high humidity. Store paper in its original wrapper until you use it.

### **AVOID TEXTURED PAPER WITH ROUGH FINISHES**

## CHECK THE PAPER TYPE SETTING

Make sure the Paper Type setting matches the paper loaded in the tray or feeder:

- From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type setting.
- For Windows users, check this setting from Print Properties.
- For Macintosh users, check this setting from the Print dialog.

## MAKE SURE THE PRINT CARTRIDGE IS NOT LOW ON TONER

When **88.xx [color] cartridge low** appears, make sure the toner is distributed evenly within the print cartridge.

**1** Remove the print cartridge.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Be careful not to touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.

**2** Firmly shake the cartridge side-to-side and front-to-back several times to redistribute the toner.

**3** Reinsert the print cartridge.

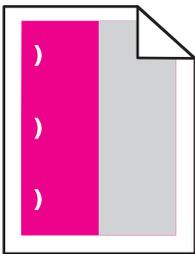
**Note:** If print quality does not improve, then replace the print cartridge.

If the problem continues, then the printer may need to be serviced. For more information, contact customer support.

## MAKE SURE THERE IS NO DEFECTIVE PRINT CARTRIDGE

Replace the defective print cartridge.

## Repeating defects appear on prints



Try one or more of the following:

## REPLACE THE PRINT CARTRIDGE

Replace the print cartridge of the color with the repeating defect, if the print defects occur in the following instances:

- in every 37.7 mm (1.48 in.) of the page
- in every 41.6 mm (1.64 in.) of the page
- in every 42.7 mm (1.68 in.) of the page
- in every 94.3 mm (3.71 in.) of the page

## REPLACE THE FUSER

Replace the fuser if print defects occur in the following instances:

- in every 95.0 mm (3.74 in.) of the page
- in every 146.7 mm (5.78 in.) of the page

## Skewed print

These are possible solutions. Try one or more of the following:

### CHECK THE PAPER GUIDES

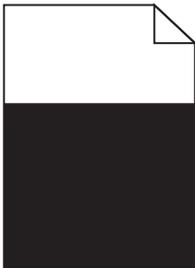
Move the length and width guides in the tray to the correct positions for the paper size loaded.

- Make sure the guides are not too far from the paper stack.
- Make sure the guides are not pressing too lightly against the paper stack.

### CHECK THE PAPER

Make sure you are using paper that meets the printer specifications.

## Solid color or black pages appear on prints



## MAKE SURE THE PRINT CARTRIDGES ARE INSTALLED CORRECTLY, ARE NOT DEFECTIVE AND NOT LOW ON TONER

- Remove the print cartridges.

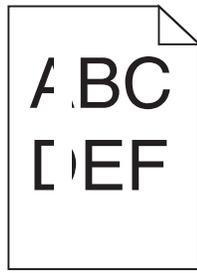
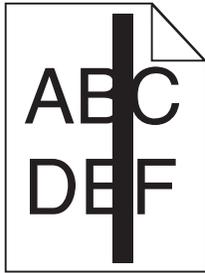
**Warning—Potential Damage:** Be careful not to touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.

- Reinsert the print cartridges.

**Note:** If the quality does not improve, replace the print cartridges.

- If the problem continues, the printer may need to be serviced. For more information, contact customer support.

## Black or white streaks appear on transparencies or paper



Try one or more of the following:

### ENSURE THAT THE FILL PATTERN IS CORRECT

If the fill pattern is incorrect, choose a different fill pattern from your software program.

### CHECK THE PAPER TYPE

- Use only the recommended transparencies.
- Ensure that the Paper Type setting matches what is loaded in the tray or feeder.
- Ensure that the Paper Texture setting is correct for the type of paper or specialty media loaded in the tray or feeder.

### MAKE SURE THE PRINT CARTRIDGE IS NOT LOW ON TONER

When **88.xx [color] cartridge low** appears, make sure the toner is distributed evenly within the print cartridge:

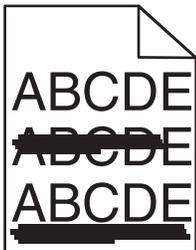
- 1 Remove the print cartridge.

**Warning—Potential Damage:** Be careful not to touch the photoconductor drum. Doing so may affect the print quality of future print jobs.

- 2 Firmly shake the cartridge side-to-side and front-to-back several times to redistribute the toner.
- 3 Reinsert the print cartridge.

If the problem continues, the printer may need to be serviced. For more information, contact Customer Support.

## Streaked horizontal lines appear on prints



Try one or more of the following:

## **SELECT ANOTHER TRAY OR FEEDER**

- From the printer control panel Paper Menu, select Default Source.
- For Windows users, select the paper source from Print Properties.
- For Macintosh users, select the paper source from the Print dialog and pop-up menus.

## **MAKE SURE THERE IS NO WORN, DEFECTIVE, OR EMPTY PRINT CARTRIDGE**

Replace the worn, defective, or empty print cartridge.

## **Toner fog or background shading appears on a page**

Try one or more of the following:

### **MAKE SURE PRINT CARTRIDGES ARE INSTALLED CORRECTLY AND ARE NOT DEFECTIVE**

Reinstall or replace the print cartridge.

### **MAKE SURE THE TRANSFER BELT IS NOT WORN OR DEFECTIVE**

Replace the transfer belt. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

### **MAKE SURE THE FUSER IS NOT WORN OR DEFECTIVE**

Replace the fuser. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

### **MAKE SURE THERE IS NO TONER IN THE PAPER PATH**

Clean any visible toner from the paper path. If the problem persists, then contact customer support.

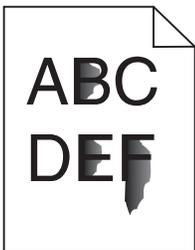
### **RECALIBRATE THE PRINTER**

Perform color adjust from the printer control panel Quality menu.

### **CHECK THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM OR APPLICATION**

The software program or application may have specified an off-white background.

## **Toner rubs off**



Try one or more of the following:

## CHECK THE PAPER TYPE AND WEIGHT SETTINGS

Make sure the paper type and weight settings match the paper loaded in the tray or feeder:

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type and Paper Weight settings. Change the Paper Weight setting from Normal to Heavy.
- 2 Before sending the print job, specify the correct paper type setting:
  - For Windows users, specify the paper type from Print Properties.
  - For Macintosh users, specify the paper type from the Print dialog.

## CHECK THE PAPER TEXTURE SETTING

From the printer control panel Paper menu, make sure the Paper Texture setting matches the paper loaded in the tray or feeder. If necessary, change the Paper Texture setting from Normal to Rough.

## MAKE SURE THE FUSER IS NOT WORN OR DEFECTIVE

Replace the worn or defective fuser. For more information, see the instruction sheet that came with the replacement part.

## Transparency print quality is poor

Try one or more of the following:

### CHECK THE TRANSPARENCIES

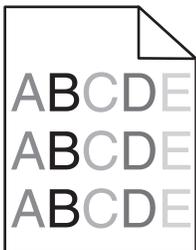
Use only transparencies that meet the printer specifications.

### CHECK THE PAPER TYPE SETTING

Make sure the paper type setting is set to Transparency:

- 1 From the printer control panel Paper menu, check the Paper Type setting.
- 2 Before sending the job to print, specify the correct type setting:
  - For Windows users, specify the type from Print Properties.
  - For Macintosh users, specify the type from the Print dialog.

## Uneven print density



## **MAKE SURE THERE IS NO DEFECTIVE OR WORN PRINT CARTRIDGE**

Replace the worn or defective print cartridge.

# **Solving color quality problems**

This section helps answer some basic color-related questions and describes how some of the features provided in the Quality Menu can be used to solve typical color problems.

## **FAQ about color printing**

### **What is RGB color?**

Red, green, and blue light can be added together in various amounts to produce a large range of colors observed in nature. For example, red and green can be combined to create yellow. Televisions and computer monitors create colors in this manner. RGB color is a method of describing colors by indicating the amount of red, green, or blue needed to produce a certain color.

### **What is CMYK color?**

Cyan, magenta, yellow, and black (known as *CMYK color*) inks or toners can be printed in various amounts to produce a large range of colors observed in nature. For example, cyan and yellow can be combined to create green. Printing presses, inkjet printers, and color laser printers create colors in this manner. CMYK color is a method of describing colors by indicating the amount of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black needed to reproduce a particular color.

### **How is color specified in a document to be printed?**

Software applications typically specify document color using RGB or CMYK color combinations. Additionally, they commonly let you modify the color of each object in a document. For more information, see the software application Help section.

### **How does the printer know what color to print?**

When you print a document, information describing the type and color of each object is sent to the printer. The color information is passed through color conversion tables that translate the color into the appropriate amounts of cyan, magenta, yellow, and black toner needed to produce the desired color. The object type information lets different color conversion tables be used for different types of objects. For example, it is possible to apply one type of color conversion table to text while applying a different color conversion table to photographic images.

### **Should I use PostScript or PCL emulation printer software? What settings should I use for the best color?**

The PostScript driver is strongly recommended for best color quality. The default settings in the PostScript driver provide preferred color quality for the majority of printouts.

### **Why doesn't the printed color match the color that I see on the computer screen?**

The color conversion tables used in Auto Color Correction mode generally approximate the colors of a standard computer monitor. However, because of technology differences that exist between printers and monitors, there are many colors that can also be affected by monitor variations and lighting conditions. For recommendations on how the printer color sample pages may be useful in solving certain color-matching problems, see the question, "How can I match a particular color (such as a color in a corporate logo)?"

### The printed page appears tinted. Can I slightly adjust the color?

Sometimes you may consider printed pages to appear tinted (for example, everything printed seems to be too red). This can be caused by environmental conditions, paper type, lighting conditions, or user preference. In these instances, adjusting the Color Balance setting may create more preferable color. Color Balance lets you make subtle adjustments to the amount of toner being used in each color plane. Selecting positive (or negative) values for cyan, magenta, yellow, and black under the Color Balance menu will slightly increase (or decrease) the amount of toner used for the chosen color. For example, if you believe the overall printed page to be too red, then decreasing both magenta and yellow could potentially improve color.

### My color transparencies seem dark when being projected. Is there anything I can do to improve the color?

This problem most commonly occurs when projecting transparencies with reflective overhead projectors. To obtain the highest projected color quality, transmissive overhead projectors are recommended. If a reflective projector must be used, then adjusting the Toner Darkness setting to 1, 2, or 3 will lighten the transparency.

Make sure to print on the recommended type of color transparencies. For more information about the paper and media specifications, see the *User's Guide* on the *Software and Documentation* CD.

### What is manual color correction?

The color conversion tables applied to each object when using the default Auto Color Correction setting generate preferred color for the majority of documents. Occasionally, you may want to apply a different color table mapping. This customization is accomplished using the Manual Color menu and the Manual Color Correction setting.

Manual Color Correction applies to RGB and CMYK color conversion table mappings as defined in the Manual Color menu.

You can select any of the different color conversion tables for RGB or CMYK:

Color conversion table	Settings
RGB	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• sRGB Display</li><li>• Display-True Black</li><li>• sRGB Vivid</li><li>• Vivid</li><li>• Off</li></ul>
CMYK	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• US CMYK</li><li>• Euro CMYK</li><li>• Vivid CMYK</li><li>• Off</li></ul>

**Note:** The Manual Color Correction setting is not useful if the software application does not specify colors with RGB or CMYK combinations. It is also not effective in situations where the software application or the computer operating system controls the adjustment of colors.

### How can I match a particular color (such as a corporate logo)?

Occasionally, you may have a need for the printed color of a particular object to closely match a specific color. For example, you may need to match the color of a corporate logo. While instances can occur in which the printer cannot exactly reproduce the desired color, you should be able to identify adequate color matches for the majority of cases.

The Color Samples menu item can provide useful information in helping solve this particular type of color-matching problem. The nine Color Samples values correspond to color conversion tables in the printer. Selecting any of the Color Samples values generates a multiple-page printout consisting of hundreds of colored boxes. Either a CMYK or RGB combination is located on each box, depending on the table selected. The observed color of each box is obtained by passing the CMYK or RGB combination labeled on the box through the selected color conversion table.

You can examine the color samples pages and identify the box whose color is the closest to the desired color. The color combination labeled on the box can then be used for modifying the color of the object in a software application. For instructions, see the software application Help. Manual Color Correction may be necessary to utilize the selected color conversion table for the particular object.

Selecting which Color Samples pages to use for a particular color-matching problem depends on the Color Correction setting being used (Auto, Off, or Manual), the type of object being printed (text, graphics, or images), and how the color of the object is specified in the software application (RGB or CMYK combinations). When the printer Color Correction setting is set to Off, the color is based on the print job information; no color conversion is implemented.

**Note:** The Color Samples pages are not useful if the software application does not specify colors with RGB or CMYK combinations. Additionally, certain situations exist where the software application or the computer operating system adjusts the RGB or CMYK combinations specified in the application through color management. The resulting printed color may not be an exact match of the Color Samples pages.

The following table can help identify which Color Sample pages to use for color matching.

Color specification and object to be printed	Color Correction setting	Sample pages to use
RGB—Text	Auto	sRGB Vivid
	Manual	Manual Color RGB Text Setting
RGB—Graphic	Auto	sRGB Vivid
	Manual	Manual Color RGB Graphic Setting
RGB—Image	Auto	sRGB Display
	Manual	Manual Color RGB Image Setting
CMYK—Text	Auto	US CMYK or Euro CMYK
	Manual	Manual Color CMYK Text Setting
CMYK—Graphic	Auto	US CMYK
	Manual	Manual Color CMYK Graphic Setting
CMYK—Image	Auto	US CMYK
	Manual	Manual Color CMYK Image Setting

**What are Detailed Color Samples and how do I access them?**

These pages require the use of the Embedded Web Server. The Embedded Web Server is a series of resident pages stored in the network printer firmware. To access these pages, browse to the IP address of the network printer. Click **Configuration Menu**, and then click **Detailed Color Samples**.

For more information about using the Embedded Web Server, see the *User's Guide on the Software and Documentation CD*.

Detailed Color Samples are pages similar to the default pages of color samples accessible from the Quality menu using the printer control panel. The default color samples available using this method have an increment value of 10% for red, green, and blue. If you find a value on this page that is close, but would like to scan more colors in a nearby area, then you can use the Detailed Color Samples to select the desired color values and a more specific increment. This provides a way to print multiple pages of colored boxes that surround a specific color of interest.

There are nine conversion tables available with the following three options:

- **Print**—Prints the default pages
- **Detailed**—Lets you enter individual red, green, and blue values and a specific increment of color
- **Reset**—Lets you clear the existing information and enter new values

The process can be duplicated for Cyan (C), Magenta (M), Yellow (Y), and Black (K) color conversion tables, too. Collectively, these values are known as CMYK color. The default increment is 10% for Black and 20% each for Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow.

## Embedded Web Server does not open

Try one or more of the following:

### CHECK THE NETWORK CONNECTION

Make sure the printer and computer are turned on and connected to the same network.

### CHECK ADDRESS ENTERED INTO THE WEB BROWSER

- Depending on the network settings, you may need to type `https://` instead of `http://` before the printer IP address to access the Embedded Web Server. For more information, contact your system support person.
- Make sure you have the correct printer IP address.

### TEMPORARILY DISABLE WEB PROXY SERVERS

Proxy servers may block or restrict you from accessing certain Web sites including the Embedded Web Server. For more information, contact your system support person.

## Contacting Customer Support

When you call Customer Support, describe the problem you are experiencing, the message on the display, and the troubleshooting steps you have already taken to find a solution.

You need to know your printer model type and serial number. For more information, see the label on the inside top front cover of the printer. The serial number is also listed on the menu settings page.

In the U.S. or Canada, call (1-800-539-6275). For other countries/regions, visit the Lexmark Web site at [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com).

# Notices

## Product information

Product name:

Lexmark C792e, C792de, C792dte, C792dhe

Machine type:

5062

Model(s):

210, 230, 235

## Edition notice

September 2010

**The following paragraph does not apply to any country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:** LEXMARK INTERNATIONAL, INC., PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions; therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This publication could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in later editions. Improvements or changes in the products or the programs described may be made at any time.

References in this publication to products, programs, or services do not imply that the manufacturer intends to make these available in all countries in which it operates. Any reference to a product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any existing intellectual property right may be used instead. Evaluation and verification of operation in conjunction with other products, programs, or services, except those expressly designated by the manufacturer, are the user's responsibility.

For Lexmark technical support, visit [support.lexmark.com](http://support.lexmark.com).

For information on supplies and downloads, visit [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com).

If you don't have access to the Internet, you can contact Lexmark by mail:

Lexmark International, Inc.  
Bldg 004-2/CSC  
740 New Circle Road NW  
Lexington, KY 40550  
USA

© 2010 Lexmark International, Inc.

All rights reserved.

## UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT RIGHTS

This software and any accompanying documentation provided under this agreement are commercial computer software and documentation developed exclusively at private expense.

## Trademarks

Lexmark, Lexmark with diamond design, MarkNet, and MarkVision are trademarks of Lexmark International, Inc., registered in the United States and/or other countries.

MarkTrack, PrintCryption, and StapleSmart are trademarks of Lexmark International, Inc.

PCL® is a registered trademark of the Hewlett-Packard Company. PCL is Hewlett-Packard Company's designation of a set of printer commands (language) and functions included in its printer products. This printer is intended to be compatible with the PCL language. This means the printer recognizes PCL commands used in various application programs, and that the printer emulates the functions corresponding to the commands.

The following terms are trademarks or registered trademarks of these companies:

Albertus	The Monotype Corporation plc
Antique Olive	Monsieur Marcel OLIVE
Apple-Chancery	Apple Computer, Inc.
Arial	The Monotype Corporation plc
CG Times	Based on Times New Roman under license from The Monotype Corporation plc, is a product of Agfa Corporation
Chicago	Apple Computer, Inc.
Clarendon	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries
Eurostile	Nebiolo
Geneva	Apple Computer, Inc.
GillSans	The Monotype Corporation plc
Helvetica	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries
Hoefler	Jonathan Hoefler Type Foundry
ITC Avant Garde Gothic	International Typeface Corporation
ITC Bookman	International Typeface Corporation
ITC Mona Lisa	International Typeface Corporation
ITC Zapf Chancery	International Typeface Corporation
Joanna	The Monotype Corporation plc
Marigold	Arthur Baker
Monaco	Apple Computer, Inc.
New York	Apple Computer, Inc.
Oxford	Arthur Baker
Palatino	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries

Stempel Garamond	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries
Taffy	Agfa Corporation
Times New Roman	The Monotype Corporation plc
Univers	Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

## Federal Communications Commission (FCC) compliance information statement

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The FCC Class A limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables or by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

**Note:** To assure compliance with FCC regulations on electromagnetic interference for a Class A computing device, use a properly shielded and grounded cable such as Lexmark part number 1021231 for parallel attach or 1021294 for USB attach. Use of a substitute cable not properly shielded and grounded may result in a violation of FCC regulations.

## Modular component notice

This product may contain the following modular component(s):

Lexmark regulatory type/model LEX-M01-003; FCC ID: IYLM01003; IC: 2376A-M01003

## Licensing notices

The following documents can be viewed from the installation software CD.

Directory	File
CD:\LEGAL	FW_License.pdf mDNS.tar.gz Expat.txt Inst_lib.txt Instgui.txt Instgui.zip

## Noise emission levels

The following measurements were made in accordance with ISO 7779 and reported in conformance with ISO 9296.

**Note:** Some modes may not apply to your product.

1-meter average sound pressure, dBA	
Printing	53 color, 52 mono
Ready	30

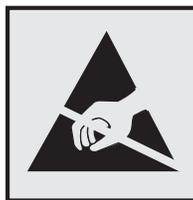
Values are subject to change. See [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com) for current values.

## Waste from Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE) directive



The WEEE logo signifies specific recycling programs and procedures for electronic products in countries of the European Union. We encourage the recycling of our products. If you have further questions about recycling options, visit the Lexmark Web site at [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com) for your local sales office phone number.

## Static sensitivity notice



This symbol identifies static-sensitive parts. Do not touch in the areas near these symbols without first touching the metal frame of the printer.

## ENERGY STAR

Any Lexmark product bearing the ENERGY STAR emblem on the product or on a start-up screen is certified to comply with Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) ENERGY STAR requirements as configured when shipped by Lexmark.



## Temperature information

Ambient temperature	15.6 to 32.2° C (60 to 90° F)
Shipping and storage temperature	-40° to 40° C (104° F)

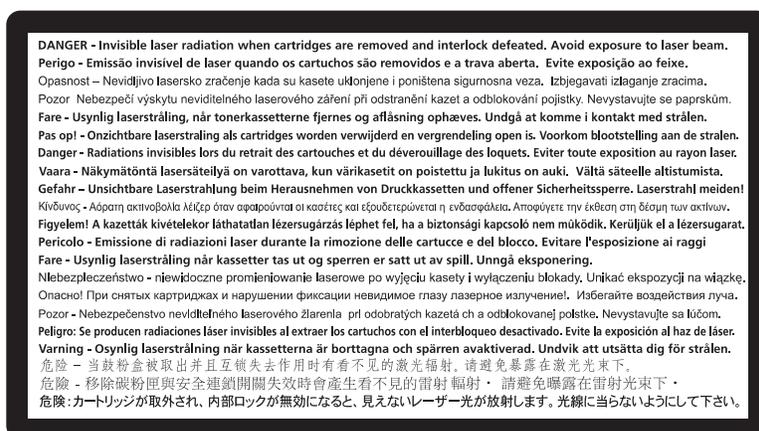
## Laser notice

This product contains a Class I (1) laser producing invisible laser radiation. The printer is certified in the U.S. to conform to the requirements of DHHS 21 CFR Subchapter J for Class I (1) laser products, and elsewhere is certified as a Class I laser product conforming to the requirements of IEC 60825-1.

Class I laser products are not considered to be hazardous. The printer contains internally a Class IIIb (3b) AlGaAs dual beam laser enclosed in a non-serviceable printhead assembly operating in the wavelength of 775-800 nanometers. The laser system and printer are designed so there is never any human access to laser radiation exceeding Class I levels during normal operation, user maintenance, or prescribed service condition.

## Laser advisory label

A laser notice label may be affixed to this printer as shown:



## Power consumption

### Product power consumption

The following table documents the power consumption characteristics of the product.

**Note:** Some modes may not apply to your product.

Mode	Description	Power consumption (Watts)
Active	The product is generating hard-copy output from electronic inputs.	850 W
Idle	The product is waiting for a print job.	50 W
Sleep Mode	The product is in a high-level energy-saving mode.	10 W

Mode	Description	Power consumption (Watts)
Hibernate	The product is in a low-level energy-saving mode.	0.55 W
Off	The product is plugged into a wall outlet, but the power switch is turned off.	0 W

The power consumption levels listed in the previous table represent time-averaged measurements. Instantaneous power draws may be substantially higher than the average.

Values are subject to change. See [www.lexmark.com](http://www.lexmark.com) for current values.

## Sleep Mode

This product is designed with an energy-saving mode called *Sleep Mode*. The Sleep Mode saves energy by lowering power consumption during extended periods of inactivity. The Sleep Mode is automatically engaged after this product is not used for a specified period of time, called the Sleep Mode Timeout.

Factory default Sleep Mode Timeout for this product (in minutes):	0
---	---

By using the configuration menus, the Sleep Mode Timeout can be modified between 1 minute and 240 minutes. Setting the Sleep Mode Timeout to a low value reduces energy consumption, but may increase the response time of the product. Setting the Sleep Mode Timeout to a high value maintains a fast response, but uses more energy.

## Off mode

If this product has an off mode which still consumes a small amount of power, then to completely stop product power consumption, disconnect the power supply cord from the wall outlet.

## Total energy usage

It is sometimes helpful to calculate the total product energy usage. Since power consumption claims are provided in power units of Watts, the power consumption should be multiplied by the time the product spends in each mode in order to calculate energy usage. The total product energy usage is the sum of each mode's energy usage.

## Industry Canada compliance statement

This Class A digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Standard ICES-003.

## Avis de conformité aux normes de l'industrie du Canada

Cet appareil numérique de classe A est conforme aux exigences de la norme canadienne relative aux équipements pouvant causer des interférences NMB-003.

## European Community (EC) directives conformity

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC and 2006/95/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility and safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product satisfies the Class A limits of EN 55022 and safety requirements of EN 60950.

## Radio interference notice

### Warning

This is a product that complies with the emission requirements of EN55022 Class A limits and immunity requirements of EN55024. This product is not intended to be used in residential/domestic environments.

This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment, this product may cause radio interference, in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

## Regulatory notices for wireless products

This section contains the following regulatory information pertaining to wireless products that contain transmitters, for example, but not limited to, wireless network cards or proximity card readers.

## Exposure to radio frequency radiation

The radiated output power of this device is far below the radio frequency exposure limits of the FCC and other regulatory agencies. A minimum separation of 20 cm (8 inches) must be maintained between the antenna and any persons for this device to satisfy the RF exposure requirements of the FCC and other regulatory agencies.

## Industry Canada (Canada)

This device complies with Industry Canada specification RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

This device has been designed to operate only with the antenna provided. Use of any other antenna is strictly prohibited per regulations of Industry Canada.

To prevent radio interference to the licensed service, this device is intended to be operated indoors and away from windows to provide maximum shielding. Equipment (or its transmit antenna) that is installed outdoors is subject to licensing.

The installer of this radio equipment must ensure that the antenna is located or pointed such that it does not emit RF fields in excess of Health Canada limits for the general population; consult Safety Code 6, obtainable from Health Canada's Web site [www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb](http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb).

The term "IC:" before the certification/registration number only signifies that the Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

## Industry Canada (Canada)

Cet appareil est conforme à la norme RSS-210 d'Industry Canada. Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes :

(1) cet appareil ne doit pas provoquer d'interférences et (2) il doit accepter toute interférence reçue, y compris celles risquant d'altérer son fonctionnement.

Cet appareil a été conçu pour fonctionner uniquement avec l'antenne fournie. L'utilisation de toute autre antenne est strictement interdite par la réglementation d'Industry Canada.

En application des réglementations d'Industry Canada, l'utilisation d'une antenne de gain supérieur est strictement interdite.

Pour empêcher toute interférence radio au service faisant l'objet d'une licence, cet appareil doit être utilisé à l'intérieur et loin des fenêtres afin de garantir une protection optimale.

Si le matériel (ou son antenne d'émission) est installé à l'extérieur, il doit faire l'objet d'une licence.

L'installateur de cet équipement radio doit veiller à ce que l'antenne soit implantée et dirigée de manière à n'émettre aucun champ HF dépassant les limites fixées pour l'ensemble de la population par Santé Canada. Reportez-vous au Code de sécurité 6 que vous pouvez consulter sur le site Web de Santé Canada [www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb](http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/rpb).

Le terme « IC » précédant le numéro de d'accréditation/inscription signifie simplement que le produit est conforme aux spécifications techniques d'Industry Canada.

## Notice to users in the European Union

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC and 2005/32/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits and the ecodesign of energy-using products.

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking.



The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product satisfies the Class A limits of EN 55022 and safety requirements of EN 60950.

Products equipped with 2.4GHz Wireless LAN option are in conformity with the protection requirements of EC Council directives 2004/108/EC, 2006/95/EC, and 1999/5/EC on the approximation and harmonization of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility, safety of electrical equipment designed for use within certain voltage limits and on radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment.

Compliance is indicated by the CE marking.



Operation is allowed in all EU and EFTA countries, but is restricted to indoor use only.

The manufacturer of this product is: Lexmark International, Inc., 740 West New Circle Road, Lexington, KY, 40550 USA. The authorized representative is: Lexmark International Technology Hungária Kft., 8 Lechner Ödön fasor, Millennium

Tower III, 1095 Budapest HUNGARY, A declaration of conformity to the requirements of the Directives is available upon request from the Authorized Representative.

This product may be used in the countries indicated in the table below.

AT	BE	BG	CH	CY	CZ	DE	DK	EE
EL	ES	FI	FR	HR	HU	IE	IS	IT
LI	LT	LU	LV	MT	NL	NO	PL	PT
RO	SE	SI	SK	TR	UK			

Česky	Společnost Lexmark International, Inc. tímto prohlašuje, že výrobek tento výrobek je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Dansk	Lexmark International, Inc. erklærer herved, at dette produkt overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Deutsch	Hiermit erklährt Lexmark International, Inc., dass sich das Gerät dieses Gerät in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Ελληνική	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Η LEXMARK INTERNATIONAL, INC. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ ΑΥΤΟ ΤΟ ΠΡΟΪΟΝ ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
English	Hereby, Lexmark International, Inc., declares that this type of equipment is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Español	Por medio de la presente, Lexmark International, Inc. declara que este producto cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Eesti	Käesolevaga kinnitab Lexmark International, Inc., et seade see toode vastab direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele muudele asjakohastele sätetele.
Suomi	Lexmark International, Inc. vakuuttaa täten, että tämä tuote on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja muiden sitä koskevien direktiivin ehtojen mukainen.
Français	Par la présente, Lexmark International, Inc. déclare que l'appareil ce produit est conforme aux exigences fondamentales et autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Magyar	Alulírott, Lexmark International, Inc. nyilatkozom, hogy a termék megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Íslenska	Hér með lýsir Lexmark International, Inc. yfir því að þessi vara er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Italiano	Con la presente Lexmark International, Inc. dichiara che questo prodotto è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latviski	Ar šo Lexmark International, Inc. deklarē, ka šis izstrādājums atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių	Šiuo Lexmark International, Inc. deklaruoja, kad šis produktas atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB direktyvos nuostatas.
Malti	Bil-preżenti, Lexmark International, Inc., jiddikjara li dan il-prodott huwa konformi mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma dispozizzjonijiet oħrajn relevanti li jinsabu fid-Direttiva 1999/5/KE.
Nederlands	Hierbij verklaart Lexmark International, Inc. dat het toestel dit product in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

Norsk	Lexmark International, Inc. erklærer herved at dette produktet er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Polski	Niniejszym Lexmark International, Inc. oświadcza, że niniejszy produkt jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Português	A Lexmark International Inc. declara que este produto está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Diretiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovensky	Lexmark International, Inc. týmto vyhlasuje, že tento produkt spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia smernice 1999/5/ES.
Slovensko	Lexmark International, Inc. izjavlja, da je ta izdelek v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Svenska	Härmed intygar Lexmark International, Inc. att denna produkt står i överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

## Statement of Limited Warranty

Lexmark C792e, C792de, C792dte, C792dhe

### Lexmark International, Inc., Lexington, KY

This limited warranty applies to the United States and Canada. For customers outside the U.S., refer to the country-specific warranty information that came with your product.

This limited warranty applies to this product only if it was originally purchased for your use, and not for resale, from Lexmark or a Lexmark Remarketer, referred to in this statement as "Remarketer."

### Limited warranty

Lexmark warrants that this product:

- Is manufactured from new parts, or new and serviceable used parts, which perform like new parts
- Is, during normal use, free from defects in material and workmanship

If this product does not function as warranted during the warranty period, contact a Remarketer or Lexmark for repair or replacement (at Lexmark's option).

If this product is a feature or option, this statement applies only when that feature or option is used with the product for which it was intended. To obtain warranty service, you may be required to present the feature or option with the product.

If you transfer this product to another user, warranty service under the terms of this statement is available to that user for the remainder of the warranty period. You should transfer proof of original purchase and this statement to that user.

### Limited warranty service

The warranty period starts on the date of original purchase as shown on the purchase receipt and ends 12 months later provided that the warranty period for any supplies and for any maintenance items included with the printer shall end earlier if it, or its original contents, are substantially used up, depleted, or consumed.

To obtain warranty service you may be required to present proof of original purchase. You may be required to deliver your product to the Remarketer or Lexmark, or ship it prepaid and suitably packaged to a Lexmark designated location.

You are responsible for loss of, or damage to, a product in transit to the Remarketer or the Lexmark designated location.

When warranty service involves the exchange of a product or part, the item replaced becomes the property of the Remarketer or Lexmark. The replacement may be a new or repaired item.

The replacement item assumes the remaining warranty period of the original product.

Replacement is not available to you if the product you present for exchange is defaced, altered, in need of a repair not included in warranty service, damaged beyond repair, or if the product is not free of all legal obligations, restrictions, liens, and encumbrances.

Before you present this product for warranty service, remove all print cartridges, programs, data, and removable storage media (unless directed otherwise by Lexmark).

For further explanation of your warranty alternatives and the nearest Lexmark authorized servicer in your area contact Lexmark on the World Wide Web at <http://support.lexmark.com>.

Remote technical support is provided for this product throughout its warranty period. For products no longer covered by a Lexmark warranty, technical support may not be available or only be available for a fee.

## **Extent of limited warranty**

Lexmark does not warrant uninterrupted or error-free operation of any product or the durability or longevity of prints produced by any product.

Warranty service does not include repair of failures caused by:

- Modification or unauthorized attachments
- Accidents, misuse, abuse or use inconsistent with Lexmark user's guides, manuals, instructions or guidance
- Unsuitable physical or operating environment
- Maintenance by anyone other than Lexmark or a Lexmark authorized servicer
- Operation of a product beyond the limit of its duty cycle
- Use of printing media outside of Lexmark specifications
- Refurbishment, repair, refilling or remanufacture by a third party of products, supplies or parts
- Products, supplies, parts, materials (such as toners and inks), software, or interfaces not furnished by Lexmark

**TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NEITHER LEXMARK NOR ITS THIRD PARTY SUPPLIERS OR REMARKETERS MAKE ANY OTHER WARRANTY OR CONDITION OF ANY KIND, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH RESPECT TO THIS PRODUCT, AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND SATISFACTORY QUALITY. ANY WARRANTIES THAT MAY NOT BE DISCLAIMED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW ARE LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE WARRANTY PERIOD. NO WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WILL APPLY AFTER THIS PERIOD. ALL INFORMATION, SPECIFICATIONS, PRICES, AND SERVICES ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE AT ANY TIME WITHOUT NOTICE.**

## **Limitation of liability**

Your sole remedy under this limited warranty is set forth in this document. For any claim concerning performance or nonperformance of Lexmark or a Remarketer for this product under this limited warranty, you may recover actual damages up to the limit set forth in the following paragraph.

Lexmark's liability for actual damages from any cause whatsoever will be limited to the amount you paid for the product that caused the damages. This limitation of liability will not apply to claims by you for bodily injury or damage to real property or tangible personal property for which Lexmark is legally liable. **IN NO EVENT WILL LEXMARK BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOST PROFITS, LOST SAVINGS, INCIDENTAL DAMAGE, OR OTHER ECONOMIC OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES.** This is true even if you advise Lexmark or a Remarketer of the possibility of such damages. Lexmark is not liable for any claim by you based on a third party claim.

This limitation of remedies also applies to claims against any Suppliers and Remarketers of Lexmark. Lexmark's and its Suppliers' and Remarketers' limitations of remedies are not cumulative. Such Suppliers and Remarketers are intended beneficiaries of this limitation.

## Additional rights

Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, or do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the limitations or exclusions contained above may not apply to you.

This limited warranty gives you specific legal rights. You may also have other rights that vary from state to state.

## LEXMARK SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY AND LICENSE AGREEMENT

PLEASE READ CAREFULLY BEFORE USING THIS PRODUCT: BY USING THIS PRODUCT, YOU AGREE TO BE BOUND BY ALL THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY AND LICENSE AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE WITH THE TERMS OF THIS SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY AND LICENSE AGREEMENT, PROMPTLY RETURN THE PRODUCT UNUSED AND REQUEST A REFUND OF THE AMOUNT YOU PAID. IF YOU ARE INSTALLING THIS PRODUCT FOR USE BY OTHER PARTIES, YOU AGREE TO INFORM THE USERS THAT USE OF THE PRODUCT INDICATES ACCEPTANCE OF THESE TERMS.

### LEXMARK SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT

This License Agreement ("Software License Agreement") is a legal agreement between you (either an individual or a single entity) and Lexmark International, Inc. ("Lexmark") that, to the extent your Lexmark product or Software Program is not otherwise subject to a written software license agreement between you and Lexmark or its suppliers, governs your use of any Software Program installed on or provided by Lexmark for use in connection with your Lexmark product. The term "Software Program" includes machine-readable instructions, audio/visual content (such as images and recordings), and associated media, printed materials and electronic documentation, whether incorporated into, distributed with or for use with your Lexmark product.

- 1 STATEMENT OF SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY.** Lexmark warrants that the media (e.g., diskette or compact disk) on which the Software Program (if any) is furnished is free from defects in materials and workmanship under normal use during the warranty period. The warranty period is ninety (90) days and commences on the date the Software Program is delivered to the original end-user. This limited warranty applies only to Software Program media purchased new from Lexmark or an Authorized Lexmark Reseller or Distributor. Lexmark will replace the Software Program should it be determined that the media does not conform to this limited warranty.
- 2 DISCLAIMER AND LIMITATION OF WARRANTIES.** EXCEPT AS PROVIDED IN THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT AND TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, LEXMARK AND ITS SUPPLIERS PROVIDE THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM "AS IS" AND HEREBY DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND ABSENCE OF VIRUSES, ALL WITH REGARD TO THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM. TO THE EXTENT LEXMARK CANNOT BY LAW DISCLAIM ANY COMPONENT OF THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, LEXMARK LIMITS THE DURATION OF SUCH WARRANTIES TO THE 90-DAY TERM OF THE EXPRESS SOFTWARE LIMITED WARRANTY.

This Agreement is to be read in conjunction with certain statutory provisions, as that may be in force from time to time, that imply warranties or conditions or impose obligations on Lexmark that cannot be excluded or modified. If any such provisions apply, then to the extent Lexmark is able, Lexmark hereby limits its liability for breach of those provisions to one of the following: providing you a replacement copy of the Software Program or reimbursement of the price paid for the Software Program.

The Software Program may include internet links to other software applications and/or internet web pages hosted and operated by third parties unaffiliated with Lexmark. You acknowledge and agree that Lexmark is not responsible in any way for the hosting, performance, operation, maintenance, or content of, such software applications and/or internet web pages.

**3 LIMITATION OF REMEDY.** TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY AND ALL LIABILITY OF LEXMARK UNDER THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT IS EXPRESSLY LIMITED TO THE GREATER OF THE PRICE PAID FOR THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM AND FIVE U.S. DOLLARS (OR THE EQUIVALENT IN LOCAL CURRENCY). YOUR SOLE REMEDY AGAINST LEXMARK IN ANY DISPUTE UNDER THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT SHALL BE TO SEEK TO RECOVER ONE OF THESE AMOUNTS, UPON PAYMENT OF WHICH LEXMARK SHALL BE RELEASED AND DISCHARGED OF ALL FURTHER OBLIGATIONS AND LIABILITY TO YOU.

IN NO EVENT WILL LEXMARK, ITS SUPPLIERS, SUBSIDIARIES, OR RESELLERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, INDIRECT, EXEMPLARY, PUNITIVE, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOST PROFITS OR REVENUES, LOST SAVINGS, INTERRUPTION OF USE OR ANY LOSS OF, INACCURACY IN, OR DAMAGE TO, DATA OR RECORDS, FOR CLAIMS OF THIRD PARTIES, OR DAMAGE TO REAL OR TANGIBLE PROPERTY, FOR LOSS OF PRIVACY ARISING OUT OR IN ANY WAY RELATED TO THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE PROGRAM, OR OTHERWISE IN CONNECTION WITH ANY PROVISION OF THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT), REGARDLESS OF THE NATURE OF THE CLAIM, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO BREACH OF WARRANTY OR CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR STRICT LIABILITY), AND EVEN IF LEXMARK, OR ITS SUPPLIERS, AFFILIATES, OR REMARKETERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES, OR FOR ANY CLAIM BY YOU BASED ON A THIRD-PARTY CLAIM, EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT THIS EXCLUSION OF DAMAGES IS DETERMINED LEGALLY INVALID. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE-STATED REMEDIES FAIL OF THEIR ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

**4 U.S.A. STATE LAWS.** This Software Limited Warranty gives you specific legal rights. You may also have other rights that vary from state to state. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts or the exclusion of limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitations may not apply to you.

**5 LICENSE GRANT.** Lexmark grants you the following rights provided you comply with all terms and conditions of this License Agreement:

- a Use.** You may Use one (1) copy of the Software Program. The term "Use" means storing, loading, installing, executing, or displaying the Software Program. If Lexmark has licensed the Software Program to you for concurrent use, you must limit the number of authorized users to the number specified in your agreement with Lexmark. You may not separate the components of the Software Program for use on more than one computer. You agree that you will not Use the Software Program, in whole or in part, in any manner that has the effect of overriding, modifying, eliminating, obscuring, altering or de-emphasizing the visual appearance of any trademark, trade name, trade dress or intellectual property notice that appears on any computer display screens normally generated by, or as a result of, the Software Program.
- b Copying.** You may make one (1) copy of the Software Program solely for purposes of backup, archiving, or installation, provided the copy contains all of the original Software Program's proprietary notices. You may not copy the Software Program to any public or distributed network.
- c Reservation of Rights.** The Software Program, including all fonts, is copyrighted and owned by Lexmark International, Inc. and/or its suppliers. Lexmark reserves all rights not expressly granted to you in this License Agreement.
- d Freeware.** Notwithstanding the terms and conditions of this License Agreement, all or any portion of the Software Program that constitutes software provided under public license by third parties ("Freeware") is licensed to you subject to the terms and conditions of the software license agreement accompanying such

Freeware, whether in the form of a discrete agreement, shrink-wrap license, or electronic license terms at the time of download. Use of the Freeware by you shall be governed entirely by the terms and conditions of such license.

- 6 TRANSFER.** You may transfer the Software Program to another end-user. Any transfer must include all software components, media, printed materials, and this License Agreement and you may not retain copies of the Software Program or components thereof. The transfer may not be an indirect transfer, such as a consignment. Prior to the transfer, the end-user receiving the transferred Software Program must agree to all these License Agreement terms. Upon transfer of the Software Program, your license is automatically terminated. You may not rent, sublicense, or assign the Software Program except to the extent provided in this License Agreement, and any attempt to do so shall be void.
- 7 UPGRADES.** To Use a Software Program identified as an upgrade, you must first be licensed to the original Software Program identified by Lexmark as eligible for the upgrade. After upgrading, you may no longer use the original Software Program that formed the basis for your upgrade eligibility.
- 8 LIMITATION ON REVERSE ENGINEERING.** You may not alter, decrypt, reverse engineer, reverse assemble, reverse compile or otherwise translate the Software Program, except as and to the extent expressly permitted to do so by applicable law for the purposes of inter-operability, error correction, and security testing. If you have such statutory rights, you will notify Lexmark in writing of any intended reverse engineering, reverse assembly, or reverse compilation. You may not decrypt the Software Program unless necessary for the legitimate Use of the Software Program.
- 9 ADDITIONAL SOFTWARE.** This License Agreement applies to updates or supplements to the original Software Program provided by Lexmark unless Lexmark provides other terms along with the update or supplement.
- 10 TERM.** This License Agreement is effective unless terminated or rejected. You may reject or terminate this license at any time by destroying all copies of the Software Program, together with all modifications, documentation, and merged portions in any form, or as otherwise described herein. Lexmark may terminate your license upon notice if you fail to comply with any of the terms of this License Agreement. Upon such termination, you agree to destroy all copies of the Software Program together with all modifications, documentation, and merged portions in any form.
- 11 TAXES.** You agree that you are responsible for payment of any taxes including, without limitation, any goods and services and personal property taxes, resulting from this Agreement or your Use of the Software Program.
- 12 LIMITATION ON ACTIONS.** No action, regardless of form, arising out of this Agreement may be brought by either party more than two years after the cause of action has arisen, except as provided under applicable law.
- 13 APPLICABLE LAW.** This Agreement is governed by the laws of the Commonwealth of Kentucky, United States of America. No choice of law rules in any jurisdiction shall apply. The UN Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.
- 14 UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT RESTRICTED RIGHTS.** The Software Program has been developed entirely at private expense. Rights of the United States Government to use the Software Program is as set forth in this Agreement and as restricted in DFARS 252.227-7014 and in similar FAR provisions (or any equivalent agency regulation or contract clause).
- 15 CONSENT TO USE OF DATA.** You agree that Lexmark, its affiliates, and agents may collect and use information you provide in relation to support services performed with respect to the Software Program and requested by you. Lexmark agrees not to use this information in a form that personally identifies you except to the extent necessary to provide such services.
- 16 EXPORT RESTRICTIONS.** You may not (a) acquire, ship, transfer, or reexport, directly or indirectly, the Software Program or any direct product therefrom, in violation of any applicable export laws or (b) permit the Software Program to be used for any purpose prohibited by such export laws, including, without limitation, nuclear, chemical, or biological weapons proliferation.
- 17 AGREEMENT TO CONTRACT ELECTRONICALLY.** You and Lexmark agree to form this License Agreement electronically. This means that when you click the "Agree" or "Yes" button on this page or use this product, you

acknowledge your agreement to these License Agreement terms and conditions and that you are doing so with the intent to “sign” a contract with Lexmark.

**18 CAPACITY AND AUTHORITY TO CONTRACT.** You represent that you are of the legal age of majority in the place you sign this License Agreement and, if applicable, you are duly authorized by your employer or principal to enter into this contract.

**19 ENTIRE AGREEMENT.** This License Agreement (including any addendum or amendment to this License Agreement that is included with the Software Program) is the entire agreement between you and Lexmark relating to the Software Program. Except as otherwise provided for herein, these terms and conditions supersede all prior or contemporaneous oral or written communications, proposals, and representations with respect to the Software Program or any other subject matter covered by this License Agreement (except to the extent such extraneous terms do not conflict with the terms of this License Agreement, any other written agreement signed by you and Lexmark relating to your Use of the Software Program). To the extent any Lexmark policies or programs for support services conflict with the terms of this License Agreement, the terms of this License Agreement shall control.

## **MICROSOFT CORPORATION NOTICES**

- 1** This product may incorporate intellectual property owned by Microsoft Corporation. The terms and conditions upon which Microsoft is licensing such intellectual property may be found at **<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=52369>**.
- 2** This product is based on Microsoft Print Schema technology. You may find the terms and conditions upon which Microsoft is licensing such intellectual property at **<http://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?LinkId=83288>**.

## **ADOBE SYSTEMS INCORPORATED NOTICE**

Contains Flash®, Flash® Lite™ and/or Reader® technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated

This Product contains Adobe® Flash® player software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated, Copyright © 1995-2007 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved. Adobe, Reader and Flash are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

# Index

## Numerics

1565 Emulation error, load emulation option 194  
2,000-sheet high-capacity feeder installing 35  
200 paper jam 169  
2000-sheet high-capacity feeder loading 66  
201 paper jam 169  
202–203 paper jams 170  
230 paper jam 171  
231–239 paper jams 172  
24x paper jam 172  
250 paper jam 173  
31.xx Missing or Defective [color] cartridge 187  
32.xx [color] cartridge part number unsupported by device 187  
34 Incorrect paper size, open [src] 187  
35 Insufficient memory to support Resource Save feature 188  
37 Insufficient memory for Flash Memory Defragment operation 188  
37 Insufficient memory to collate job 188  
37 Insufficient memory, some Held Jobs were deleted 188  
37 Insufficient memory, some held jobs will not be restored 188  
38 Memory full 188  
39 Complex page, some data may not have printed 188  
40 [color] invalid refill, change cartridge 189  
400–403 paper jams 174  
431–454 paper jams 175  
455 staple jam 175  
456–458 paper jams 175  
460–461 paper jams 174  
51 Defective flash detected 189  
52 Not enough free space in flash memory for resources 189  
53 Unformatted flash detected 189  
54 Network [x] software error 190  
54 Serial option [x] error 189

54 Standard network software error 189  
55 Unsupported option in slot [x] 190  
550-sheet tray installing 35  
550-sheet tray (standard or optional) loading 63  
56 Parallel port [x] disabled 190  
56 Serial port [x] disabled 190  
56 Standard parallel port disabled 190  
56 Standard USB port disabled 190  
56 USB port [x] disabled 191  
57 Configuration change, some held jobs were not restored 191  
58 Input config error 191  
58 Too many bins attached 191  
58 Too many disks installed 191  
58 Too many flash options installed 192  
58 Too many trays attached 192  
59 Incompatible output bin [x] 192  
61 Remove defective disk 192  
62 Disk full 192  
80.xx Fuser life warning 193  
80.xx Fuser missing 193  
80.xx Fuser near life warning 192  
80.xx Replace fuser 193  
82.xx Replace waste toner bottle 193  
82.xx Waste toner bottle missing 193  
82.xx Waste toner bottle nearly full 193  
83.xx Replace transfer module 193  
83.xx Transfer module life warning 193  
83.xx Transfer module missing 193  
88.xx [Color] cartridge critically low 194  
88.xx [color] cartridge low 194  
88.xx [color] cartridge nearly low 194

## A

accessing the system board 19

Active NIC menu 104  
adding bookmarks using the Embedded Web Server 55  
using the printer control panel 55  
adding bookmarks from the printer control panel 55  
adding bookmarks using the Embedded Web Server 55  
Adjusting color 178  
adjusting display brightness 60  
adjusting Sleep Mode 59  
adjusting toner darkness 86  
An error has occurred with the flash drive 178  
AppleTalk menu 109  
applications list home screen 50  
assigning a custom paper type name 72  
attaching cables 36  
attaching the system board cover 19  
available internal options 18  
avoiding paper jams 167

## B

Bin Setup menu 102  
black-and-white printing 86  
blank pages 202  
buttons, printer control panel 12  
buttons, touch screen using 15

## C

cables  
Ethernet 36  
USB 36  
calling Customer Support 217  
canceling  
print job, from computer 86  
canceling a print job  
from a computer 86  
from the printer control panel 85  
cannot open Embedded Web Server 217

- card stock
    - loading in multipurpose feeder 68
    - tips 81
  - Change [input src] to [custom type name] load [orientation] 179
  - Change [src] to [custom string] 179
  - Change [src] to [custom string] load [orientation] 179
  - Change [src] to [custom type name] 178
  - Change [src] to [size] 179
  - Change [src] to [size] [type] 180
  - Change [src] to [size] [type] load [orientation] 180
  - Change [src] to [size] load [orientation] 180
  - changing the home screen background
    - using the printer control panel 51
  - changing the home screen background image
    - using the Embedded Web Server 51
  - changing the idle screen settings 51
    - using the Embedded Web Server 51
  - Check [src] orientation or guides 180
  - checking an unresponsive printer 178
  - checking printer status
    - on Embedded Web Server 164
  - checking printer status using the Embedded Web Server 164
  - checking status of supplies 156
  - checking the status of supplies 156
  - checking the virtual display
    - using the Embedded Web Server 164
  - checking virtual display
    - using the Embedded Web Server 164
  - cleaning
    - exterior of the printer 154
    - cleaning kit ordering 158
    - cleaning the printhead lenses 154
  - Close [tray] door 181
  - Close finisher side door 181
  - Close finisher top cover 181
  - Close front door 181
  - Close left side door 181
  - Close paper transport cover 180
  - confidential print jobs 82
    - printing from a Macintosh computer 82
    - printing from Windows 82
  - Confidential Print menu 117
  - configuration information
    - wireless network 39
  - Configure MP menu 95
  - configuring Eco-Settings
    - from printer control panel 52
    - using the Embedded Web Server 53
  - configuring port settings 46
  - conservation settings
    - brightness, adjusting 60
    - Eco-Mode 58
    - Eco-Settings 52, 53
    - Hibernate Mode 59
    - Quiet Mode 58
    - Sleep Mode 59
  - conserving supplies 57
  - contacting Customer Support 217
  - corrupted printer hard disk 181
  - Custom Bin Names menu 101
  - Custom Names menu 101
  - custom paper type
    - assigning 72
  - custom paper type name
    - creating 71
  - Custom Type [x]
    - changing name 71
  - Custom Types menu 100
- D**
- Default Source menu 91
  - directory list
    - printing 85
  - disk wiping 151
  - Disk Wiping menu 118
  - display icons
    - changing 52
  - display troubleshooting
    - display is blank 195
    - display shows only diamonds 195
- display, printer control panel 12
    - adjusting brightness 60
  - disposing of printer hard disk 150
  - documents, printing
    - from Macintosh 79
    - from Windows 79
- E**
- Eco-Mode setting 58
  - Eco-Settings
    - configuring 53
    - configuring, from printer control panel 52
  - Embedded Web Server
    - accessing 164
    - administrator settings 164
    - checking printer status 164
    - checking supplies 156
    - functions 164
    - networking settings 164
    - problem accessing 217
    - setting up e-mail alerts 165
    - using 164
  - Embedded Web Server Administrator's Guide
    - where to find 164
  - emission
    - notices 220, 221, 223, 224, 225
  - Empty the hole punch box 182
  - encrypting the printer hard disk 153
  - envelopes
    - loading in multipurpose feeder 68
    - tips on using 80
  - environmental settings
    - conserving supplies 57
    - display brightness, adjusting 60
    - Eco-Mode 58
    - Hibernate Mode 59
    - Quiet Mode 58
    - Sleep Mode 59
  - erasing hard disk memory 151
  - erasing non-volatile memory 151
  - erasing volatile memory 151
  - Ethernet networking
    - Macintosh 44
    - Windows 44
  - Ethernet port 36
  - exit bins
    - linking 71

- exporting a configuration
  - using the Embedded Web Server 56
- exporting a configuration using the Embedded Web Server 56
- exterior of the printer
  - cleaning 154
- e-mail alerts
  - low supply levels 165
  - paper jam 165
  - setting up 165

## F

- factory defaults
  - restoring 166
- FAQ about color printing 214
- FCC notices 220, 224
- fiber optic
  - network setup 44
- finding more information about the printer 8
- finisher
  - finishing features 87
  - supported paper sizes 87
- finisher features 87
- Finishing menu 137
- firmware card
  - installing 24
- flash drive
  - printing from 84
- Flash Drive menu 131
- flash drives
  - supported file types 83
- flash memory card
  - installing 24
  - troubleshooting 200
- font sample list
  - printing 85
- Forms and Favorites 55
- fuser or transfer module
  - ordering 157

## G

- General Settings menu 120
- Green settings
  - Eco-Mode 58
  - Hibernate Mode 59
  - Quiet Mode 58
- green settings
  - Eco-Settings 52, 53

## H

- hard disk
  - wiping 151
- hard disk memory
  - erasing 151
- held jobs 82
  - printing from a Macintosh computer 82
  - printing from Windows 82
- Help menu 148
- Hibernate Mode
  - using 59
- home screen
  - applications 50
  - buttons, description 13
  - customizing 50
- home screen applications
  - using 50
- home screen background image
  - adding, using Embedded Web Server 51
  - changing, using Embedded Web Server 51
- home screen buttons
  - description 13
- home screen icons
  - changing 52
- HTML menu 147

## I

- icons
  - changing 52
- idle screen images
  - adding, using Embedded Web Server 51
  - deleting, using Embedded Web Server 51
  - editing, using Embedded Web Server 51
- Image menu 148
- importing a configuration
  - using the Embedded Web Server 56
- importing a configuration using the Embedded Web Server 56
- Insert hole punch box 182
- Insert staple cartridge 182
- Install bin [x] 182
- Install envelope feeder 182
- Install Tray [x] 183
- installing a memory card 22

- installing an Internal Solutions Port 25
- installing on a wireless network
  - using Windows 40
- installing options
  - order of installation 35
- installing printer
  - on wireless network 40
- installing printer hard disk 29
- installing printer on a network
  - wired networking 44
- installing printer on a wireless network
  - using Macintosh 42
- installing printer software
  - adding options 38
- installing the 2,000-sheet high-capacity feeder 35
- installing the 550-sheet tray 35
- installing the printer software 38
- internal print server
  - troubleshooting 200
- Internal Solutions Port
  - changing port settings 46
  - installing 25
  - troubleshooting 200
- IPv6 menu 108
- isolating print quality problems 85, 202

## J

- jam locations 167
- jam numbers
  - meaning 167
- jams
  - avoiding 167
  - locating 167
- jams, clearing
  - 200 paper jam 169
  - 201 paper jam 169
  - 202–203 paper jams 170
  - 230 paper jam 171
  - 231–239 paper jams 172
  - 24x paper jam 172
  - 250 paper jam 173
  - 400–403 paper jams 174
  - 431–454 paper jams 175
  - 455 staple jam 175
  - 456–458 paper jams 175
  - 460–461 paper jams 174
- Job Accounting menu 135

## L

- labels, paper
  - tips 81
- letterhead
  - loading, 2000-sheet high-capacity feeder 66
  - loading, multipurpose feeder 79
  - loading, trays 79
- letterhead printing 79
- light colored line, white line, or incorrectly colored line appears on prints 206
- linking
  - exit bins 71
- linking exit bins 71
- linking trays 70
- Load Manual Feeder with [custom string] 184
- Load Manual Feeder with [custom type name] 184
- Load Manual Feeder with [size] 184
- Load Manual Feeder with [type] [size] 184
- Load staples 185
- loading
  - 2000-sheet high-capacity feeder 66
  - 550-sheet tray (standard or optional) 63
  - letterhead in 2000-sheet high-capacity feeder 66
  - letterhead in multipurpose feeder 79
  - multipurpose feeder 68
- loading card stock
  - in multipurpose feeder 68
- loading envelopes
  - in multipurpose feeder 68
- loading the multipurpose feeder 68
- loading the standard tray 63
- loading transparencies
  - in multipurpose feeder 68
- lock, security 12

## M

- memory
  - types installed on printer 150
- memory card
  - installing 22

- troubleshooting 199
- menu settings page
  - printing 37
- menus
  - Active NIC 104
  - AppleTalk 109
  - Bin Setup 102
  - Confidential Print 117
  - Configure MP 95
  - Custom Bin Names 101
  - Custom Names 101
  - Custom Types 100
  - Default Source 91
  - diagram of 89
  - Disk Wiping 118
  - Finishing 137
  - Flash Drive 131
  - General Settings 120
  - Help 148
  - HTML 147
  - Image 148
  - IPv6 108
  - Job Accounting 135
  - Miscellaneous Security Settings 117
  - Network [x] 104
  - Network Card 106
  - Network Reports 106
  - Paper Loading 99
  - Paper Size/Type 92
  - Paper Texture 95
  - Paper Weight 97
  - Parallel [x] 111
  - PCL Emul 144
  - PDF 143
  - PostScript 143
  - Quality 139
  - Reports 103
  - Security Audit Log 119
  - Serial [x] 113
  - Set Date and Time 119
  - Setup 134
  - SMTP Setup menu 116
  - Standard Network 104
  - Standard USB 110
  - Substitute Size 95
  - Supplies 90
  - TCP/IP 106
  - Utilities 142
  - Wireless 108
  - XPS 142
- menus diagram 89

- Miscellaneous Security Settings menu 117
- moving the printer 162, 163
- moving your printer 9
- multipurpose feeder
  - loading 68

## N

- Network [x] menu 104
- Network Card menu 106
- network options 18
- Network Reports menu 106
- network setup page
  - printing 38
- Networking Guide
  - where to find 164
- noise emission levels 221
- non-volatile memory 150
  - erasing 151
- notices 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226

## O

- options
  - 2,000-sheet high-capacity feeder, installing 35
  - 550-sheet tray, installing 35
  - firmware card 24
  - firmware cards 18
  - flash memory card 24
  - Internal Solutions Port, installing 25
  - list 18
  - memory card, installing 22
  - memory cards 18
  - network 18
  - order of installation 35
  - ports 18
  - printer hard disk, installing 29
  - printer hard disk, removing 34
  - updating in printer driver 38
- ordering
  - cleaning kit 158
  - fuser or transfer module 157
  - print cartridges 156
  - staple cartridges 157
  - waste toner bottle 157
- ordering a print cartridge 156

## P

### paper

- characteristics 73
- letterhead 74
- preprinted forms 74
- recycled 75
- selecting 74
- storing 75
- unacceptable 74
- Universal Paper Size 101
- Universal size setting 62
- using recycled 57
- Paper changes needed 185
- paper feed troubleshooting
  - message remains after jam is cleared 201
- paper jams
  - avoiding 167
- paper jams, clearing
  - 200 paper jam 169
  - 201 paper jam 169
  - 202–203 paper jams 170
  - 230 paper jam 171
  - 231–239 paper jams 172
  - 24x paper jam 172
  - 250 paper jam 173
  - 400–403 paper jams 174
  - 431–454 paper jams 175
  - 456–458 paper jams 175
  - 460–461 paper jams 174
- Paper Loading menu 99
- paper size
  - setting 62
- Paper Size/Type menu 92
- paper sizes
  - supported by printer 76
- Paper Texture menu 95
- paper type
  - setting 62
- paper types
  - duplex support 78
  - supported by printer 78
  - where to load 78
- Paper Weight menu 97
- Parallel [x] menu 111
- PCL Emul menu 144
- PDF menu 143
- port settings
  - configuring 46
- PostScript menu 143

- print cartridge
  - replacing 158
- print cartridges
  - ordering 156
- print irregularities 207
- print job
  - canceling, from computer 86
- print quality
  - cleaning the printhead
    - lenses 154
  - isolating problems 85
- print quality troubleshooting
  - black streaks on a page 211
  - blank pages 202
  - characters have jagged edges 203
  - clipped images 204
  - colors not aligned properly 203
  - gray background on prints 205
  - isolating print quality
    - problems 202
  - light colored line, white line, or incorrectly colored line appears on prints 206
  - poor transparency quality 213
  - print irregularities 207
  - print is too dark 208
  - print is too light 208
  - repeating print defects 209
  - shadow images appear on prints 204
  - skewed print 210
  - solid color or black pages appear on prints 210
  - streaked horizontal lines appear on prints 211
  - toner fog or background shading 212
  - toner rubs off 212
  - uneven print density 213
  - white streaks on a page 211
- print troubleshooting
  - error reading USB drive 195
  - held jobs do not print 196
  - incorrect characters print 197
  - incorrect margins 205
  - jammed pages are not reprinted 201
  - job prints from wrong tray 197
  - job prints on wrong paper 197
  - jobs do not print 195
  - Large jobs do not collate 197
  - multiple-language PDF files do not print 195
  - paper curl 206
  - paper frequently jams 201
  - print job takes longer than expected 196
  - tray linking does not work 197
  - unexpected page breaks 198
- printer
  - configured models 10
  - finishing features 87
  - minimum clearances 9
  - moving 9, 162, 163
  - selecting a location 9
  - shipping 163
- printer configurations 10
- printer control panel
  - adjusting brightness 60
  - changing the home screen
    - background 51
  - configuring Eco-Settings 52
  - factory defaults, restoring 166
  - understanding 12
- printer hard disk
  - disposing of 150
  - encrypting 153
  - installing 29
  - removing 34
  - troubleshooting 200
- printer hard disk encryption 153
- printer information
  - where to find 8
- printer messages
  - 1565 Emulation error, load emulation option 194
  - 31.xx Missing or Defective [color] cartridge 187
  - 32.xx [color] cartridge part number unsupported by device 187
  - 34 Incorrect paper size, open [src] 187
  - 35 Insufficient memory to support Resource Save feature 188
  - 37 Insufficient memory for Flash Memory Defragment operation 188
  - 37 Insufficient memory to collate job 188
  - 37 Insufficient memory, some Held Jobs were deleted 188
  - 37 Insufficient memory, some held jobs will not be restored 188

- 38 Memory full 188
- 39 Complex page, some data may not have printed 188
- 40 [color] invalid refill, change cartridge 189
- 51 Defective flash detected 189
- 52 Not enough free space in flash memory for resources 189
- 53 Unformatted flash detected 189
- 54 Network [x] software error 190
- 54 Serial option [x] error 189
- 54 Standard network software error 189
- 55 Unsupported option in slot [x] 190
- 56 Parallel port [x] disabled 190
- 56 Serial port [x] disabled 190
- 56 Standard parallel port disabled 190
- 56 Standard USB port disabled 190
- 56 USB port [x] disabled 191
- 57 Configuration change, some held jobs were not restored 191
- 58 Input config error 191
- 58 Too many bins attached 191
- 58 Too many disks installed 191
- 58 Too many flash options installed 192
- 58 Too many trays attached 192
- 59 Incompatible output bin [x] 192
- 61 Remove defective disk 192
- 62 Disk full 192
- 80.xx Fuser life warning 193
- 80.xx Fuser missing 193
- 80.xx Fuser near life warning 192
- 80.xx Replace fuser 193
- 82.xx Replace waste toner bottle 193
- 82.xx Waste toner bottle missing 193
- 82.xx Waste toner bottle nearly full 193
- 83.xx Replace transfer module 193
- 83.xx Transfer module life warning 193
- 83.xx Transfer module missing 193
- 88.xx [Color] cartridge critically low 194
- 88.xx [color] cartridge low 194
- 88.xx [color] cartridge nearly low 194
- Adjusting color 178
- an error has occurred with the flash drive 178
- an error has occurred with the USB drive 178
- Change [input src] to [custom type name] load [orientation] 179
- Change [src] to [custom string] 179
- Change [src] to [custom string] load [orientation] 179
- Change [src] to [custom type name] 178
- Change [src] to [size] 179
- Change [src] to [size] [type] 180
- Change [src] to [size] [type] load [orientation] 180
- Change [src] to [size] load [orientation] 180
- Check [src] orientation or guides 180
- Close [tray] door 181
- Close finisher side door 181
- Close finisher top cover 181
- Close front door 181
- Close left side door 181
- Close paper transport cover 180
- Disk corrupted 181
- Disk near full. Securely clearing disk space. 181
- Disk problem 181
- Empty the hole punch box 182
- Insert hole punch box 182
- Insert staple cartridge 182
- Insert Tray [x] 182
- Install bin [x] 182
- Install envelope feeder 182
- Install Tray [x] 183
- Load [src] with [custom string] 183
- Load [src] with [custom type name] 183
- Load [src] with [size] 183
- Load [src] with [type] [size] 184
- Load Manual Feeder with [custom string] 184
- Load Manual Feeder with [custom type name] 184
- Load Manual Feeder with [size] 184
- Load Manual Feeder with [type] [size] 184
- Load staples 185
- Paper changes needed 185
- Reattach bin [x] 185
- Reattach bin [x] – [y] 185
- Remove packaging material, [area name] 186
- Remove paper from [linked bin set name] 186
- Remove paper from all bins 186
- Remove paper from bin [x] 186
- Remove paper from standard output bin 186
- Restore Held Jobs? 186
- Slide finisher to the left 186
- Some held jobs were not restored 187
- Supply needed to complete job 187
- Unsupported disk 187
- Unsupported USB device, please remove 182
- printer options troubleshooting
  - 2,000-sheet drawer problems 199
  - cannot detect flash memory card 200
  - cannot detect printer hard disk 200
  - internal print server 200
  - Internal Solutions Port 200
  - memory card 199
  - option not working 198
  - paper tray problems 199
  - USB/parallel interface card 200
- printer software
  - installing 38
- printhead lenses
  - cleaning 154
- printing
  - black-and-white 86
  - canceling, from printer control panel 85
  - directory list 85
  - font sample list 85
  - from flash drive 84
  - from Macintosh 79

- from Windows 79
- menu settings page 37
- network setup page 38
- on letterhead 79
- print quality test pages 85
- printing a directory list 85
- printing a document 79
- printing a font sample list 85
- printing a menu settings page 37
- printing a network setup page 38
- printing confidential and other held jobs
  - from a Macintosh computer 82
  - from Windows 82
- printing from a flash drive 84
- printing in black and white 86
- printing on letterhead 79
- printing print quality test pages 85
- publications
  - where to find 8

## Q

- Quality menu 139

## R

- Reattach bin [x] 185
- Reattach bin [x] – [y] 185
- reattaching the system board cover 19
- recycled paper
  - using 57, 75
- recycling
  - Lexmark packaging 61
  - Lexmark products 61
  - toner cartridges 61
  - WEEE statement 221
- reducing noise
  - configuring, using the printer control panel 52
- reducing printer noise 58
  - using the Embedded Web Server 53
- Remove packaging material, [area name] 186
- Remove paper from [linked bin set name] 186
- Remove paper from all bins 186
- Remove paper from bin [x] 186
- Remove paper from standard output bin 186
- removing printer hard disk 34

- repeat print jobs 82
  - printing from a Macintosh computer 82
  - printing from Windows 82
- repeating print defects 209
- replacing a print cartridge 158
- replacing the waste toner bottle 161
- reports
  - viewing 165
- Reports menu 103
- reserve print jobs 82
  - printing from a Macintosh computer 82
  - printing from Windows 82
- Restore Held Jobs? 186
- restoring factory default settings 166

## S

- safety information 6, 7
- saving energy
  - configuring, using the printer control panel 52
  - using the Embedded Web Server 53
- saving paper
  - configuring, using the printer control panel 52
  - using the Embedded Web Server 53
- Security Audit Log menu 119
- security lock 12
- selecting a location for the printer 9
- Serial [x] menu 113
- serial printing
  - setting up 48
- Set Date and Time menu 119
- setting
  - TCP/IP address 106
- setting the paper size 62
- setting the paper type 62
- setting the Universal paper size 62
- setting up e-mail alerts using the Embedded Web Server 165
- setting up serial printing 48
- setting up the printer
  - on a wired network (Macintosh) 44
  - on a wired network (Windows) 44

- Setup menu 134
- shadow images appear on prints 204
- shipping the printer 163
- Sleep Mode
  - adjusting 59
- Slide finisher to the left 186
- SMTP Setup menu 116
- solid color or black pages appear on prints 210
- Some held jobs were not restored 187
- Standard Network menu 104
- standard tray
  - loading 63
- Standard USB menu 110
- staple cartridges
  - ordering 157
- staple jam, clearing
  - 455 staple jam 175
- statement of volatility 150
- status of supplies
  - checking 156
- storing
  - paper 75
  - supplies 155
- storing print jobs 82
- streaked horizontal lines appear on prints 211
- streaks appear on a page 211
- Substitute Size menu 95
- supplies
  - checking status 156
  - checking, from printer control panel 156
  - checking, using the Embedded Web Server 156
  - conserving 57
  - storing 155
    - using recycled paper 57
- Supplies menu 90
- supplies, ordering
  - cleaning kit 158
  - fuser or transfer module 157
  - print cartridges 156
  - staple cartridges 157
  - waste toner bottle 157
- Supply needed to complete job 187
- supported flash drives 83
- supported paper sizes 76

- supported paper types and weights 78
- system board
  - accessing 19
- system board cover
  - attaching 19
  - reattaching 19

**T**

- TCP/IP menu 106
- tips
  - card stock 81
  - labels, paper 81
  - on using envelopes 80
  - on using letterhead 79
  - on using transparencies 81
- tips on using envelopes 80
- tips on using letterhead 79
- toner cartridges
  - recycling 61
- toner darkness
  - adjusting 86
- toner rubs off 212
- touch screen
  - buttons, using 15
- transparencies
  - loading 81
  - loading in multipurpose feeder 68
  - tips on using 81
  - using 81
- trays
  - linking 70
  - unlinking 71
- troubleshooting
  - cannot open Embedded Web Server 217
  - checking an unresponsive printer 178
  - contacting Customer Support 217
  - FAQ about color printing 214
- troubleshooting, display
  - display is blank 195
  - display shows only diamonds 195
- troubleshooting, paper feed
  - message remains after jam is cleared 201
- troubleshooting, print
  - error reading USB drive 195
  - held jobs do not print 196

- incorrect characters print 197
- incorrect margins 205
- jammed pages are not reprinted 201
- job prints from wrong tray 197
- job prints on wrong paper 197
- jobs do not print 195
- Large jobs do not collate 197
- multiple-language PDF files do not print 195
- paper curl 206
- paper frequently jams 201
- print job takes longer than expected 196
- tray linking does not work 197
- unexpected page breaks 198

troubleshooting, print quality

- black streaks on a page 211
- blank pages 202
- characters have jagged edges 203
- clipped images 204
- colors not aligned properly 203
- gray background on prints 205
- isolating print quality problems 202
- light colored line, white line, or incorrectly colored line appears on prints 206
- poor transparency quality 213
- print irregularities 207
- print is too dark 208
- print is too light 208
- repeating print defects 209
- shadow images appear on prints 204
- skewed print 210
- solid color or black pages appear on prints 210
- streaked horizontal lines appear on prints 211
- toner fog or background shading 212
- toner rubs off 212
- uneven print density 213
- white streaks on a page 211

troubleshooting, printer options

- 2,000-sheet drawer
  - problems 199
- cannot detect flash memory card 200

- cannot detect printer hard disk 200
- internal print server 200
- Internal Solutions Port 200
- memory card 199
- option not working 198
- paper tray problems 199
- USB/parallel interface card 200

**U**

- understanding the home screen 13
- understanding the printer control panel 12
- uneven print density 213
- unexpected page breaks 198
- Universal Paper Size 101
  - setting 62
- Universal Setup menu 101
- unlinking trays 71
- Unsupported USB device, please remove 182
- updating options in printer driver 38
- USB port 36
- USB/parallel interface card
  - troubleshooting 200
- using Eco-Mode 58
- using Forms and Favorites 55
- using Hibernate Mode 59
- using Quiet Mode 58
- using recycled paper 57
- using the Embedded Web Server 164
- using the touch-screen buttons 15
- Utilities menu 142

**V**

- verify print jobs 82
  - printing from a Macintosh computer 82
  - printing from Windows 82
- viewing
  - reports 165
- virtual display
  - checking, using Embedded Web Server 164
- volatile memory 150
  - erasing 151
- volatility
  - statement of 150

## **W**

waste toner bottle

- ordering 157

- replacing 161

wiping the hard disk 151

wired network setup

- using Macintosh 44

- using Windows 44

Wireless menu 108

wireless network

- configuration information 39

- installation, using Macintosh 42

- installation, using Windows 40

wireless network setup

- in Windows 40

wireless printer setup

- in Macintosh 42

## **X**

XPS menu 142